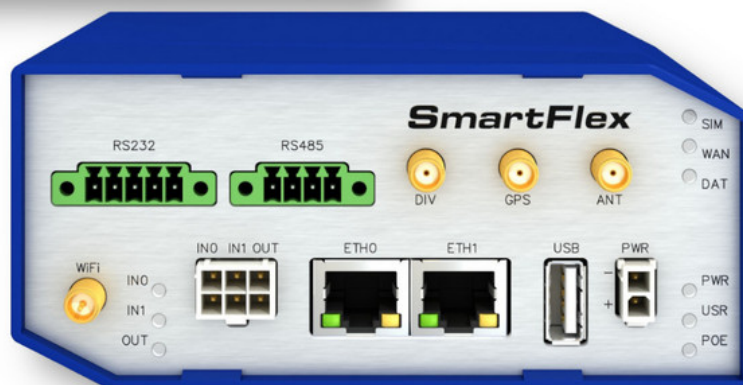
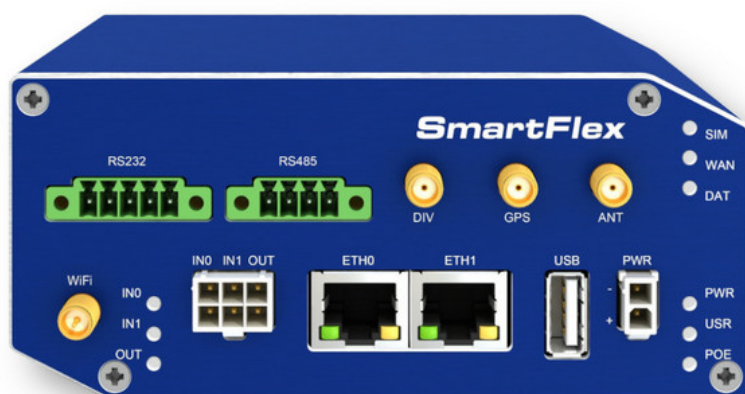


Configuration Manual

SmartFlex Family



© 2026 Advantech Czech s.r.o. No part of this publication may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photography, recording, or any information storage and retrieval system, without prior written consent. Information in this manual is subject to change without notice and does not represent a commitment by Advantech.

Advantech Czech s.r.o. shall not be liable for any incidental or consequential damages arising from the use, performance, or furnishing of this manual.

All brand names used in this manual are registered trademarks of their respective owners. The use of trademarks or other designations in this publication is for reference purposes only and does not imply endorsement by the trademark holder.

Used symbols



Important

Important — Indicates a risk to personal safety or potential damage to the router. Follow these instructions precisely to prevent injury or equipment damage.



Warning

Warning — Highlights conditions that may cause malfunction, loss of data, or unexpected behavior in specific situations. Read carefully before proceeding.



Info

Info — Provides helpful tips, context, or references that improve understanding but are not strictly required to complete the task.

Firmware Version

This manual applies to firmware version **6.6.2 (July 28, 2026)**. Features introduced after this version may not be covered.

Contents

1. Getting Started	1
1.1 Document Contents	1
1.2 Configuration Environments	2
1.2.1 Web Interface Initial Setup	3
1.2.2 Remote Management Platform	5
1.3 Device	6
1.3.1 Persistent Storage	6
1.3.2 Reset Procedures	6
2. Status	7
2.1 General	7
2.2 Mobile WAN	12
2.3 Wi-Fi	15
2.3.1 Status	15
2.3.2 Scan	20
2.4 Network	21
2.5 DHCP	25
2.6 IPsec	26
2.7 WireGuard	27
2.8 Dynamic DNS	28
2.9 Connections	29
2.10 Router Apps	30
2.11 System Log	31
3. Configuration	32
3.1 Ethernet	32
3.2 VLAN	45
3.3 VRRP	47
3.4 Mobile WAN	50
3.5 PPPoE	60
3.6 WiFi	62
3.6.1 Access Point	62
3.6.2 Station	67
3.6.3 Country	70
3.7 Backup Routes	71
3.8 Static Routes	80
3.9 Firewall	81
3.9.1 Sites	85
3.10 NAT	86
3.11 OpenVPN	91
3.12 IPsec	96
3.13 WireGuard	105
3.14 VXLAN	109
3.15 GRE	111
3.16 L2TP	113
3.17 PPTP	115
3.18 Services	117
3.18.1 Dynamic DNS	117
3.18.2 FTP	119
3.18.3 GNSS	120

3.18.4	HTTP	123
3.18.5	LLDP	125
3.18.6	NTP	126
3.18.7	SMTP	128
3.18.8	SMS	129
3.18.9	SNMP	133
3.18.10	SSH	137
3.18.11	Syslog	139
3.18.12	Telnet	142
3.19	Peripheral Ports	143
3.19.1	RS-232 Port	143
3.19.2	RS-485 Port	146
3.19.3	USB Port	147
3.19.4	Inputs/Outputs	149
3.20	System	150
3.20.1	Authentication	150
3.20.2	Identification	154
3.20.3	Automatic Update	155
3.21	Events	159
3.22	Scripts	162
3.22.1	Startup	162
3.22.2	Up/Down IPv4	163
3.22.3	Up/Down IPv6	163
3.23	Scripts	164
3.23.1	Startup	164
3.23.2	Up/Down IPv4	165
3.23.3	Up/Down IPv6	165
3.24	Quick Setup	166
4.	Customization	169
4.1	Router Apps	169
4.2	Settings	171
5.	Administration	172
5.1	Manage Users	172
5.2	Modify User	178
5.3	Change Profile	179
5.4	Set Date and Time	180
5.5	Manage SIM	181
5.5.1	Unlock SIM	181
5.5.2	Unblock SIM	182
5.5.3	Set SMS Center	183
5.5.4	Switch SIM	184
5.6	Send SMS	185
5.7	Backup Configuration	186
5.8	Restore Configuration	187
5.8.1	Restore from File	187
5.8.2	Factory Reset	188
5.9	Update Firmware	189
5.10	Reboot	191
5.10.1	Reboot Now	191
5.10.2	Reboot Schedule	192
5.11	Logout	193

6. Typical Use Cases	194
6.1 Access to the Internet from LAN	194
6.2 Backup Access to the Internet from LAN	197
6.3 Secure Network Interconnection with VPN	202
6.4 Serial Gateway	205
Appendix A: Open Source Software License	207
Appendix B: Glossary and Acronyms	208
Appendix C: Index	212
Appendix D: Related Documents	215

List of Figures

1	Web GUI layout overview	4
2	Mobile WAN status page	12
3	Wi-Fi AP status page	15
4	Wi-Fi STA status page	18
5	Wi-Fi scan results	20
6	Network status page overview	21
7	DHCP status page	25
8	IPsec status	26
9	WireGuard status page	27
10	Dynamic DNS status page	28
11	List of active network connections	29
12	Router Apps status page	30
13	System log page	31
14	LAN configuration page	32
15	LAN configuration page	33
16	Example of an IPv6 address with prefix	36
17	IEEE 802.1X functional diagram	37
18	Network topology for example 1	39
19	LAN configuration for example 1	40
20	Network topology for example 2	41
21	LAN configuration for example 2	42
22	Network topology for example 3	43
23	LAN configuration for example 3	44
24	VLAN configuration page	45
25	VRRP configuration page	47
26	An example of VRRP topology	49
27	Main router configuration	49
28	Mobile WAN configuration page – part 1	50
29	Mobile WAN configuration page – part 2	51
30	Connection check example	55
31	Configuration for SIM card switching Example 1	59
32	Configuration for SIM card switching Example 2	59
33	PPPoE configuration page	60
34	Wi-Fi access point configuration page	66
35	Wi-Fi station configuration page	69
36	Backup routes configuration page	72
37	GUI configuration for example 1	74
38	Network topology for example 1	74
39	GUI configuration for example 2	75
40	Network topology for example 2	75
41	GUI configuration for example 3	76
42	Single WAN mode topology for example 3	77
43	Multiple WANs mode topology for example 3	77
44	GUI configuration for example 4	78
45	Network topology for example 4	78
46	GUI configuration for example 5	79
47	Network topology for example 5	79
48	Static routes configuration page	80
49	IPv4 default firewall configuration	81
50	IPv4 firewall configuration topology example	84
51	IPv4 firewall configuration example	84

52	Firewall sites configuration page	85
53	NAT IPv4 configuration page	86
54	Topology for NAT example 1	89
55	NAT configuration for example 1	89
56	Topology for NAT example 2	90
57	NAT configuration for example 2	90
58	OpenVPN tunnel configuration page	91
59	An example of OpenVPN topology	95
60	IPsec tunnels configuration page – part 1	99
61	IPsec tunnels configuration page – part 2	100
62	IPsec configuration topology example	104
63	WireGuard tunnel configuration page	105
64	An example of WireGuard topology	107
65	Router A: WireGuard status and route table	108
66	Router B: WireGuard status and route table	108
67	VXLAN configuration page	109
68	GRE tunnel configuration page	111
69	An example of GRE topology	112
70	L2TP tunnel configuration page	113
71	An example of L2TP topology	114
72	PPTP tunnel configuration page	115
73	An example of PPTP topology	116
74	Configuration of FTP server	119
75	GNSS configuration page	122
76	Web server configuration page	123
77	LLDP configuration page	125
78	NTP configuration page	126
79	SMTP client configuration example	128
80	SMS configuration page	129
81	SNMP configuration page	134
82	OID basic structure	135
83	MIB browser example	136
84	SSH server configuration page	137
85	Syslog configuration page	139
86	Telnet server configuration page	142
87	RS-232 serial port configuration	143
88	Ethernet-to-serial communication configuration example	145
89	Serial interface configuration example	146
90	Inputs/Outputs configuration example	149
91	Authentication configuration page	150
92	RADIUS configuration	152
93	TACACS+ configuration	153
94	Identification configuration page	154
95	Automatic Update configuration page	155
96	Example of a scheduled automatic update	157
97	Example of an automatic update using the MAC address	158
98	Events configuration page	159
99	IPv6 up/down script configuration page	163
100	IPv6 up/down script configuration page	165
101	Quick Setup page	166
102	Default Router Apps page (the File Extension and Free Space values depend on the router model)	169
103	Router Apps page with online apps loaded	170
104	Router Apps server settings	171
105	Manage Users configuration page	172

106	Generating an RSA key pair with PuTTYgen	176
107	Forced password change prompt	177
108	Modify User configuration page	178
109	Change profile page	179
110	Set date and time page	180
111	Unlock SIM page	181
112	Unblock SIM page	182
113	Set SMS service center page	183
114	Switch SIM page	184
115	Send SMS dialog	185
116	Backup configuration page	186
117	Restore from file page	187
118	Factory reset page	188
119	Update firmware administration page	189
120	Firmware update in progress	190
121	Reboot Now Submenu	191
122	Reboot schedule submenu	192
123	Access to the internet from LAN: a topology example	194
124	Access to the internet from LAN: ethernet configuration	195
125	Access to the internet from LAN: mobile WAN configuration	196
126	Backup access to the internet: a topology example	197
127	Backup access to the internet: ethernet configuration	198
128	Backup access to the internet: wi-fi configuration	199
129	Backup access to the internet: mobile WAN configuration	200
130	Backup access to the internet: backup routes configuration	201
131	Secure networks interconnection: a topology example	202
132	Secure network interconnection: OpenVPN configuration	204
133	Serial Gateway – sample topology	205
134	Serial Gateway – expansion port 1	206

List of Tables

1	Reset storage actions	6
2	Mobile connection status items	7
3	Ethernet status items	8
4	PoE PSE status items	8
5	Peripheral port status description	9
6	Geolocation information	9
7	GNSS information	10
8	Security information items	10
9	System information items	11
10	Mobile network information details	13
11	Signal strength value ranges	14
12	Time period definitions	14
13	Mobile network statistics details	14
14	Wi-Fi module information	16
15	Wi-Fi AP status details	16
16	Wi-Fi STA status details	18
17	Wi-Fi scan results description	20
18	Common interface types	22
19	Interface parameter descriptions	23
20	Backup routes status parameters	24
21	DHCP status column descriptions	25
22	WireGuard status parameter descriptions	27
23	Dynamic DNS status messages	28
24	Description of columns in the connections list	29
25	Network interface example – IPv4 and IPv6	33
26	Network interface global items	34
27	Dynamic DHCP server configuration	35
28	Static DHCP server configuration	35
29	IPv6 prefix delegation configuration	36
30	Supported roles for IEEE 802.1X authentication	38
31	802.1X authentication configuration	38
32	VLAN configuration options	45
33	VRRP instance configuration options	47
34	Connection checking parameters	48
35	Mobile WAN configuration items description	52
36	Check connection to mobile network configuration	54
37	Data limit configuration	55
38	SIM card switching configuration	56
39	Parameters for SIM card switching	57
40	Other settings	58
41	PPPoE configuration options	60
42	Wi-Fi configuration items description	62
43	WLAN configuration items description	67
44	Backup route mode descriptions	73
45	Backup routes interface configuration	73
46	Static routes configuration options	80
47	Incoming packet filtering	82
48	Forward packet filtering	83
49	Port forwarding rule configuration	86
50	Remote access configuration options	87
51	Default server and NAT helper configuration	88

52	OpenVPN configuration items	93
53	Authentication and security options	94
54	OpenVPN configuration example	95
55	Policy-based vs. route-based IPsec comparison	96
56	IPsec tunnel configuration items description	101
57	Simple IPv4 IPsec tunnel configuration	104
58	WireGuard tunnel configuration options	106
59	Cryptographic key configuration	106
60	WireGuard IPv4 tunnel configuration example	107
61	VXLAN configuration parameters	109
62	Example of secure VXLAN bridge over VPN	110
63	GRE tunnel configuration options	111
64	GRE tunnel configuration example	112
65	L2TP tunnel configuration options	113
66	L2TP tunnel configuration example	114
67	PPTP tunnel configuration options	115
68	PPTP tunnel configuration example	116
69	Dynamic DNS configuration settings	117
70	Example of secure Dynamic DNS configuration	118
71	FTP configuration items description	119
72	GNSS configuration items description	120
73	Web server configuration items description	123
74	LLDP configuration parameters	125
75	NTP configuration items description	127
76	SMTP client configuration settings	128
77	SMS notification configuration	129
78	Remote control configuration	130
79	SMS control commands	131
80	AT-SMS protocol configuration	131
81	Supported AT commands	132
82	SNMP configuration items description	133
83	Object identifiers for digital inputs and outputs	135
84	General SSH settings	137
85	SSH host key settings	138
86	Local logging settings	140
87	Remote forwarding settings	140
88	Remote server authentication settings	141
89	Telnet configuration settings	142
90	RS-232 serial port configuration items	144
91	USR LED operation modes overview	149
92	General authentication configuration options	150
93	RADIUS configuration options	152
94	TACACS+ configuration options	153
95	Identification configuration items	154
96	Automatic Update configuration options	155
97	Available events	160
98	Available actions	160
99	Action definitions	160
100	SNMP settings for events	161
101	Quick Setup: Time and Region	167
102	Quick Setup: LAN Port and DHCP Server	167
103	Quick Setup: Mobile Network	168
104	Quick Setup: System and Service Settings	168
105	Router Apps server settings descriptions	171
106	User action buttons	173

107	New user parameters	173
108	Profile management options	179
109	Backup configuration items	186
110	Restore from file options	187
111	Update firmware page items	189
112	Reboot schedule configuration items description	192

1. Getting Started

Important



To ensure a secure deployment, it is crucial to evaluate potential risks and configure the router to mitigate them. We strongly recommend consulting the [Security Guidelines](#) application note for fundamental security practices.

1.1 Document Contents

This manual provides detailed setup instructions for Advantech SmartFlex routers, covering the following key areas:

- An overview of all available configuration environments, including the web interface, command line (SSH), and remote management platforms – detailed in Chapter [1.2 Configuration Environments](#).
- Item-by-item descriptions of all settings, structured to match the web interface menu:
 - **Status Pages** – Chapter [2 Status](#).
 - **Configuration Settings** – Chapter [3 Configuration](#).
 - **Customization Options** – Chapter [4 Customization](#).
 - **Administration Tools** – Chapter [5 Administration](#).
- Configuration examples for typical use cases – Chapter [6 Typical Use Cases](#).

Info



For hardware-related topics, such as product ordering codes, physical features, initial hardware setup, and technical specifications, please refer to the **Hardware Manual** available on the [Engineering Portal](#).

1.2 Configuration Environments

Warning

Important Notes Before Configuration

- Before putting the router into operation, ensure all required hardware components (antennas, SIM cards, etc.) are properly connected. For detailed instructions, refer to the [Hardware Manual](#) for your specific model.
- For security reasons, always keep the router's firmware updated to the latest version. Do not downgrade to a version older than the factory release or upload firmware intended for a different model, as this can cause malfunctions.
- It is highly recommended to have JavaScript enabled in your web browser. Without it, some functions and most field validation checks will be disabled.
- Three consecutive failed login attempts will temporarily block web access from that IP address for one minute.
- All routers have the *WebAccess/DMP* client pre-installed. When activated, the client may send identification data to the server. For more details, see Chapter [1.2.2 Remote Management Platform](#).
- If you are ever unsure about a configuration setting, please contact our technical support for assistance.

Info

GUI Tips:

- Throughout the web interface, helpful information is displayed to the right of many input fields. For numeric items, this includes the valid range and unit. For other fields, you may find contextual hints or examples.
- When you hover the mouse over an input field, a tooltip will appear showing the item's internal configuration name. This is particularly useful for scripting or remote configuration (e.g., via *WebAccess/DMP*).

Advantech routers can be configured using one of the following environments:

- **Web Browser:** A graphical user interface (GUI) accessible via HTTP(S). This is the primary method covered in this manual, beginning with Chapter [1.2.1 Web Interface Initial Setup](#).
- **Command Line:** A console interface accessible via Secure Shell (SSH). For a detailed guide to all available commands, refer to the [Command Line Interface](#) Application Note.
- **Remote Management Platform:** Advantech's *WebAccess/DMP* platform allows for extensive remote management, monitoring, and mass configuration of routers. For more information, see Chapter [1.2.2 Remote Management Platform](#).

For information on extending the router's functionality with custom scripts and applications, see the [Extending Router Functionality](#) Application Note.

1.2.1 Web Interface Initial Setup

Warning

Starting with firmware version 6.5.0, both IPv4 and IPv6 firewalls are enabled by default. Proper configuration of these settings is critical to avoid unintentionally blocking router communication during initial setup.

Info

- Users with the *User* role have read-only access to the web interface, except for the ability to change their own password. Certain menu items are not available to non-admin users.
- On a new router, or after a factory reset, the *Quick Setup* page is displayed immediately after login, allowing for a streamlined initial configuration; see Chapter 3.24 *Quick Setup* for details.

Advantech routers feature a secure, HTTPS-based Web GUI that provides access to all configuration and monitoring functions. The interface offers real-time network statistics, signal strength information, system log access, and comprehensive device management. To ensure secure communication, the Web GUI enforces TLS 1.2 or higher and requires certificate validation to prevent man-in-the-middle attacks.

Figure 1 shows the main elements of the interface, including the router identification header, the navigation menu, and the workspace where detailed configuration options are displayed. These clearly defined sections help users quickly locate system information, adjust operating parameters, and manage administrative settings.

To access the web interface for the first time on a factory-default router:

1. **Hardware Preparation:** For cellular models, insert an active SIM card. For detailed instructions, see the *Hardware Manual* for your specific model. Attach all required antennas before powering on the device and use only an Advantech-approved power supply as specified in the hardware documentation.
2. **Network Connection:** During boot-up, the router's DHCP server activates on the ETH0 interface. Connect your computer to this port and ensure it is configured to obtain an IP address automatically via DHCP. The router will assign your computer an IP address from the `192.168.1.0/24` range.
3. **Web Access:** Open a modern web browser and navigate to `https://192.168.1.1`. Note that unsecured HTTP connections are not permitted.
4. **Login Credentials:** The factory-default administrator account is `root`. The password for this account is printed on the router's product label¹.
5. **Initial Setup:** Upon your first login, you will be required to change the default password. The new password must meet the complexity requirements detailed in Chapter 3.20.1 *Authentication*. You will then be automatically directed to the *Quick Setup* page to complete the initial configuration, as described in Chapter 3.24 *Quick Setup*.
6. **Certificate Trust:** To avoid browser certificate warnings, it is recommended to install the router's self-signed certificate or upload a certificate from a trusted Certificate Authority (CA), as described in subsection *Managing HTTPS Certificates*.

¹On older models where the label does not specify a password, the default is `root`.

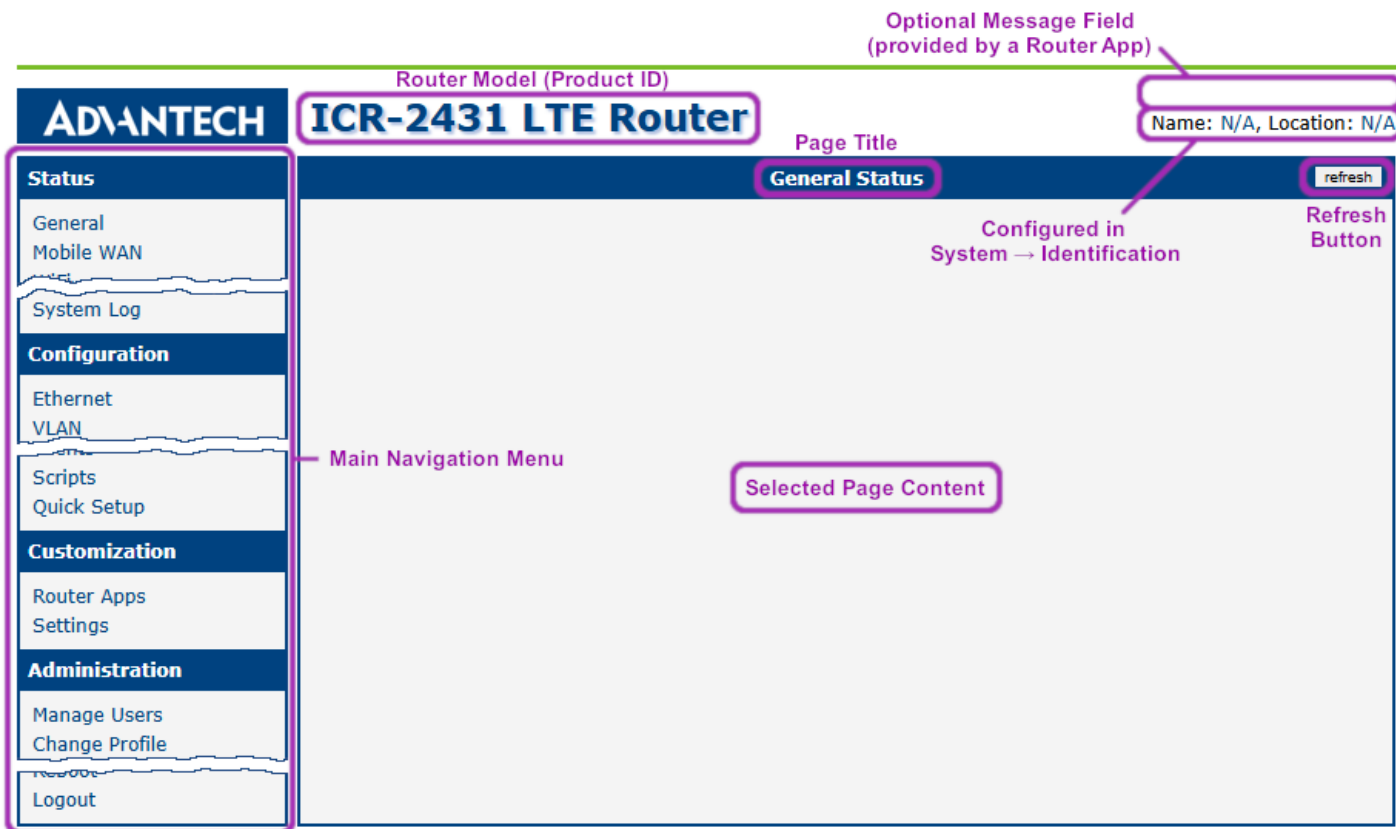


Figure 1: Web GUI layout overview

Managing HTTPS Certificates

By default, the router uses a self-signed HTTPS certificate. Because this certificate is not issued by a trusted Certificate Authority (CA), your web browser will display a security warning each time you access the web interface.

To avoid this warning, we recommend uploading a certificate signed by a trusted CA. This can be done on the *HTTP* configuration page, as described in Chapter 3.18.4 *HTTP*.

You will need to replace the `/etc/certs/https_cert` and `/etc/certs/https_key` files on the router.

As an alternative, you can add the router’s self-signed certificate to your browser’s or operating system’s trust store. This will suppress the security warnings without needing a CA-signed certificate.

Allowed and Restricted Input Characters

When entering information into any configuration field in the web interface, it is important to use only permitted characters. Using forbidden characters can lead to unpredictable behavior or errors.

- **Allowed characters:** 0-9 a-z A-Z * , + - . / : = ? ! # % @ [] _ { } ~
- **Forbidden characters:** " \$ & ' () ; < > ^ ` |



Warning

Although the system may allow you to save non-ASCII characters after confirming a warning message, using them, especially for passwords, is **not recommended** as it can cause compatibility issues with other systems.

Supported Certificate Formats

The web interface supports the following file formats for certificate and private key uploads:

- **Certificates (CA, Local, Remote):** `.pem`, `.crt`, `.p12`
- **Private Keys:** `.pem`, `.key`, `.p12`

Ensure that your files are in one of these formats to guarantee a successful upload.

1.2.2 Remote Management Platform

WebAccess/DMP is an advanced, cloud-based platform designed for the bulk management of Advantech routers and IoT gateways. It provides a centralized system for monitoring, configuring, and provisioning devices at scale. Key features include:

- Zero-touch provisioning for new device deployments.
- Mass configuration and firmware updates.
- Real-time status monitoring and alerts.
- Secure remote access to device web interfaces and command lines.

For more information, visit the official [WebAccess/DMP](#) website.

Client Configuration

The *WebAccess/DMP* client (Router App) is pre-installed and enabled by default in the standard (non-customized) router configuration. The connection to the server can be managed from several locations in the web interface:

- *Configuration* → *Quick Setup* (during initial setup or later)
- *Customization* → *Router Apps* → *WebAccess/DMP Client*

Warning

The activated *WebAccess/DMP* client may send identification data to the server.

1.3 Device

1.3.1 Persistent Storage

The device’s persistent storage is divided into three main partitions:

- **System Data:** Contains the core operating system and firmware files.
- **User Data:** A separate partition for user-created files and data, accessible at `/var/data`.
- **Router Apps:** A dedicated partition for installed Router Apps, accessible at `/opt`.

1.3.2 Reset Procedures



Warning

Before performing any reset that restores factory defaults, it is highly recommended to back up your current configuration. See Chapter 5.7 *Backup Configuration* for instructions.

The router offers three distinct reset procedures to handle different scenarios. The method for initiating these resets varies based on the router model.

- **Reboot (Software Reset):** This action simply restarts the router, keeping the currently saved configuration. It can be triggered from the *Reboot* page in the web interface. On models with an *RST* button, a brief press of **less than 4 seconds** also initiates a reboot.
- **Configuration Reset (Factory Reset):**¹ This procedure restores the router to its original factory settings, including all router and Router App configurations.
 - On these models, this reset is triggered by a single press of the *RST* button.
- **Emergency Reset:**¹ This is a recovery procedure for situations where the router fails to boot, often due to a configuration error or filesystem issue. It resets all configurations to factory defaults.
 - Disconnect the router from its power source.
 - Press and hold the *RST* button.
 - While still holding the button, reconnect the power and continue holding for **at least 10 seconds**.
 - In addition, all user data (`/var/data`), installed Router Apps (`/opt`), and device certificates (`/etc/certs`) are deleted.

The following table summarizes how each reset procedure affects the data stored on the router.

Storage	Reset	Configuration Reset	Emergency Reset
Router & RA Configuration	Keep	Reset to default	Reset to default
System Data	Keep	Keep	Keep
User Data	Keep	Keep	Deleted
Installed Router Apps	Keep	Keep	Deleted
Device Certificates	Keep	Keep	Deleted
User Account Locks	Keep	Keep	Remove
Factory Reset of Cellular Module	No	No	Yes

Table 1: Reset storage actions

¹Upon first login after a reset, the user will be prompted to change their password.

2. Status

Info

All status pages can display live data. To enable this feature, click the *refresh* button in the top-right corner of the page. To stop the automatic updates and reduce data transfer, click the *pause* button.

2.1 General

The *Status* → *General* page provides a summary of the router's basic information and current activities. The content is divided into sections based on the router's hardware configuration and may include status information for the mobile connection, LAN interfaces, system details, Wi-Fi, and peripheral ports.

Info

An IPv6 interface can have multiple addresses simultaneously. If you click *More Information*, you may see an additional IPv6 address in the EUI-64 format. This is a link-local address, automatically generated from the interface's MAC address, and is standard behavior for IPv6.

Mobile Connection

This section displays real-time status and traffic statistics for the active mobile WAN connection.

Item	Description
<i>SIM Card</i>	The currently active SIM card (1st or 2nd).
<i>Interface</i>	The name of the network interface (e.g., usb0).
<i>Flags</i>	The current status flags for the interface: • Up: The interface is administratively enabled. • Running: The interface is operational and connected. • Multicast: The interface supports multicast traffic.
<i>IP Address</i>	The IP address assigned to the interface by the mobile operator.
<i>MTU</i>	Maximum Transmission Unit: the largest packet size (in bytes) that can be transmitted over the interface.
<i>Rx Data / Tx Data</i>	The total amount of data received (Rx) and transmitted (Tx).
<i>Rx Packets / Tx Packets</i>	The total number of packets received (Rx) and transmitted (Tx).
<i>Rx Errors / Tx Errors</i>	The number of packets with errors (e.g., failed checksums) during reception (Rx) or transmission (Tx).
<i>Rx Dropped / Tx Dropped</i>	The number of packets that were dropped, likely due to a lack of system resources (e.g., full buffers).
<i>Rx Overruns / Tx Overruns</i>	The number of packets lost because the hardware buffer was full before the system could process the previous packet.
<i>Uptime</i>	The duration of the current, active mobile network connection.

Table 2: Mobile connection status items

Ethernet

Each physical Ethernet port (e.g., eth0, eth1) has a dedicated section on the *General* status page.

Item	Description
<i>Interface</i>	The name of the network interface (e.g., eth0).
<i>Flags</i>	The current status flags for the interface (see Table 2 for details).
<i>IP Address</i>	The IPv4 address configured for this interface.
<i>IPv6 Address</i>	The IPv6 address configured for this interface.
<i>MAC Address</i>	The unique Media Access Control (MAC) address of the hardware interface.
<i>MTU</i>	The Maximum Transmission Unit for the interface.
<i>Rx Data / Tx Data</i>	The total amount of data received (Rx) and transmitted (Tx).
<i>Rx Packets / Tx Packets</i>	The total number of packets received (Rx) and transmitted (Tx).
<i>Rx Errors / Tx Errors</i>	The number of packets with errors during reception (Rx) or transmission (Tx).
<i>Rx Dropped / Tx Dropped</i>	The number of packets dropped due to resource limitations.
<i>Rx Overruns / Tx Overruns</i>	The number of packets lost due to hardware buffer overruns.

Table 3: Ethernet status items

PoE PSE

If the router is equipped with a Power Sourcing Equipment (PSE) expansion board, the status of each PoE-capable LAN port is displayed in the corresponding Ethernet section.

Item	Description
<i>PoE PSE Status</i>	The current operational status of the PoE functionality on the port: • Disabled: PoE is disabled for this port in the <i>Ethernet</i> configuration. • Undervoltage: The router's input power supply does not meet the required voltage for PoE operation. • Overcurrent/Incompatible: A fault was detected, either because the connected device is drawing too much current or it is not a compliant PoE device. • Idle: PoE is enabled on the port, but no powered device (PD) is currently connected. • Class 0 – 4¹: Indicates the power classification of the connected device, defining its power budget (e.g., Class 1 for very low power, Class 4 for high power).
<i>PoE PSE Power²</i>	The current power being delivered to the connected device, measured in Watts (W).
<i>PoE PSE Voltage²</i>	The current voltage being supplied to the connected device, measured in Volts (V).
<i>PoE PSE Current²</i>	The current being drawn by the connected device, measured in milliamperes (mA).

Table 4: PoE PSE status items

¹Class 4 is valid only for *IEEE 802.3at (PoE+ Type 2)* devices and is not supported for older *IEEE 802.3af (PoE Type 1)* devices.

²This information is visible only when a powered device is connected and actively drawing power.

Wi-Fi

The *WiFi AP 1* and *WiFi AP 2* sections display information about the Wi-Fi interfaces operating as Access Point 1 and Access Point 2. The items displayed here have the same meaning as the items described in Table 3. The *DFS* item indicates whether Dynamic Frequency Selection (DFS) is supported. DFS is a mechanism that allows access points in the 5 GHz spectrum to operate on restricted channels, requiring them to switch to a different channel if interference with priority services (such as radar) is detected. For configuration details, see Chapter 3.6.1 *Access Point*.

The *WiFi STA* section displays information about the Wi-Fi interface operating in Station (STA) mode. For configuration details, see Chapter 3.6.2 *Station*. The items displayed here have the same meaning as the items described in Table 3.

Peripheral Ports

This section displays the status of all installed peripheral ports on the router.

Item	Description
<i>Expansion Port 1</i>	Expansion port fitted to the position 1 (<i>None</i> indicates that this position is equipped with no port).
<i>Expansion Port 2</i>	Expansion port fitted to the position 2 (<i>None</i> indicates that this position is equipped with no port).
<i>Digital Input 0</i>	The current state of the first digital input.
<i>Digital Input 1</i>	The current state of the second digital input.
<i>Digital Output</i>	The current state of digital output.

Table 5: Peripheral port status description

To understand the specific voltage levels that trigger the states returned by the `status ports` or `io get` commands, refer to the *Parameters of I/O Ports* chapter in the Hardware Manual. Please note that these specifications may vary for different router platforms.

Geolocation

Info

This information is available only on router models equipped with a GNSS module and only when the GNSS service is enabled.

This section displays the router's current position, as determined by the GNSS receiver.

Item	Description
<i>Latitude</i>	The router's current north-south position, expressed in degrees.
<i>Longitude</i>	The router's current east-west position, expressed in degrees.
<i>Altitude</i>	The router's current height above sea level, measured in meters.
<i>Speed over ground</i>	The router's current speed, measured in kilometers per hour.
<i>Course over ground</i>	The direction in which the router is moving, expressed in degrees relative to true north.
<i>Show on map</i>	Clicking this link opens the router's current position in Google Maps in your default web browser.

Table 6: Geolocation information

GNSS

Info

This information is available only on router models equipped with a GNSS module and only when the GNSS service is enabled.

This section displays detailed information about the satellite signals and the receiver's status.

Item	Description
<i>Current Time (UTC)</i>	The current time obtained from the satellite signals, expressed in Coordinated Universal Time (UTC).
<i>Fix Type</i>	The type of position fix. A 2D fix requires at least three satellites and provides latitude and longitude. A 3D fix requires at least four satellites and provides latitude, longitude, and altitude.
<i>HDOP</i>	Horizontal Dilution of Precision. A measure of the geometric quality of the satellite configuration. A lower value indicates higher positional accuracy.
<i>Satellites Used</i>	The number of satellites currently being used for the position fix out of the total number of visible satellites, counted across all used constellations.
<i>Constellation Satellites</i>	The list of identification numbers of all visible satellites of the given constellation. A separate list (e.g., <i>GPS Satellites</i>) is displayed for each constellation selected in the GNSS configuration (Chapter 3.18.3 GNSS).
<i>SNR</i>	Signal-to-Noise Ratio for each visible satellite in the constellation. A higher value indicates a stronger and clearer signal. A hyphen (-) indicates that the satellite is visible but its signal is too weak to be measured.
<i>Used</i>	Indicates whether a specific satellite is being used in the position calculation (Y for Yes, N for No).

Table 7: GNSS information

Security Information

This section provides security-related information about the router and the currently logged-in user.

Item	Description
<i>User</i>	The username of the currently logged-in user.
<i>Last Login</i>	The time of the user's last successful login and the IP address from which they connected.
<i>Failed Logins</i>	The number of failed login attempts since the last successful login.
<i>SSH Fingerprint</i>	The SHA-256 fingerprint of the router's SSH server public key. Use it to verify the identity of the router when connecting via SSH.
<i>Last Factory Reset</i>	The date and time of the last factory reset of the router.

Table 8: Security information items

System Information

The *System Information* section displays key details about the router's hardware, software, and current operational state. Note that some items are only displayed after clicking the *More Information* link.

Item	Description
<i>Part Number</i>	The specific ordering code that identifies the product's exact hardware and software configuration. This is typically printed on the label on the device itself.
<i>Product Type</i>	The hardware model name of the router which identifies the exact hardware configuration. It corresponds to the <i>Model no.</i> stated in the datasheet.
<i>Product Name</i>	The commercial name of the product family that shares the same firmware base.
<i>Firmware Version</i>	The version of the firmware currently installed on the router.
<i>Serial Number</i>	The unique serial number of the device.
<i>Hardware UUID¹</i>	A permanent, non-changeable Unique Hardware Identifier for the device.
<i>Product Revision¹</i>	The manufacturing revision number of the router's hardware.
<i>Profile</i>	The currently active configuration profile (e.g., Standard or an alternative profile).
<i>Free Space</i>	The amount of available storage for Router Apps and user data.
<i>CPU Usage</i>	The current processor load, shown as a percentage. Enable auto-refresh to see live data.
<i>Memory Usage</i>	The current RAM usage, shown as a percentage. Enable auto-refresh to see live data.
<i>Power Board²</i>	The type of PoE (Power over Ethernet) expansion board detected in the router.
<i>RTC Battery</i>	The status of the internal Real-Time Clock battery (e.g., OK, Low).
<i>Supply Voltage</i>	The current input voltage being supplied to the router.
<i>Temperature</i>	The internal temperature of the router.
<i>Time</i>	The current system date and time.
<i>Uptime</i>	The total time elapsed since the router was last rebooted.
<i>Licenses</i>	A link to a list of open-source software components used in the firmware, along with their respective licenses.

Table 9: System information items

¹This item may not be available on all router models.

²Visible only on models equipped with a PoE expansion board.

2.2 Mobile WAN

The *Status* → *Mobile WAN* page provides a comprehensive, real-time overview of the router's cellular connection. It is divided into three main sections: Mobile Network Information, Connection Statistics, and a detailed Connection Log.

Mobile WAN Status

refresh

Mobile Network Information

Registration : Home Network

Operator : Vodafone CZ

Technology : LTE

PLMN : 23003

Cell : 10A804

TAC : 947C

Channel : 1849

Band : B3

Signal Strength : -85 dBm

Signal Quality : -11 dB

RSSI : -55 dBm

RSRP : -85 dBm

RSRQ : -11 dB

SINR : 18 dB

CSQ : 14

Manufacturer : Quectel

Model : EM12-G

Revision : EM12GPAR01A20M4G

Firmware Release : EM12GPAR01A20M4G_01.300.01.300

IMEI : 869 518

ICCID : 894 9019

IMSI : 230 901

SMS Center : +420 681

» Less Information «

Statistics for 1st SIM card

Interval : Today

Yesterday

This Week

Last Week

This Period

Last Period

Rx Data : 422 KiB

11 KiB

434 KiB

0 KiB

434 KiB

0 KiB

Tx Data : 184 KiB

7 KiB

191 KiB

0 KiB

191 KiB

0 KiB

Connections : 18

15

34

0

34

0

Signal Min : -91 dBm

N/A

-91 dBm

N/A

-91 dBm

N/A

Signal Avg : -87 dBm

N/A

-87 dBm

N/A

-87 dBm

N/A

Signal Max : -83 dBm

N/A

-83 dBm

N/A

-83 dBm

N/A

Cells : 69

13

83

0

83

0

Availability : 96.9%

55.8%

94.6%

0.0%

94.6%

0.0%

Statistics for 2nd SIM card

Interval : Today

Yesterday

This Week

Last Week

This Period

Last Period

Rx Data : 494 KiB

2 KiB

496 KiB

0 KiB

496 KiB

0 KiB

Tx Data : 146 KiB

2 KiB

148 KiB

0 KiB

148 KiB

0 KiB

Connections : 2

1

3

0

3

0

Signal Min : -91 dBm

N/A

-91 dBm

N/A

-91 dBm

N/A

Signal Avg : -87 dBm

N/A

-87 dBm

N/A

-87 dBm

N/A

Signal Max : -83 dBm

N/A

-83 dBm

N/A

-83 dBm

N/A

Cells : 1

1

1

0

1

0

Availability : 26.9%

21.5%

26.0%

0.0%

26.0%

0.0%

Connection Log

2025-11-12 06:06:29 (1st SIM card) Connection successfully established.

Figure 2: Mobile WAN status page

Mobile Network Information

This section displays detailed information about the current network connection and the cellular module.

Item	Description
Network Parameters	
<i>Registration</i>	The current registration status on the mobile network (e.g., Registered, Home Network; Registered, Roaming).
<i>Operator</i>	The name of the currently connected mobile network operator.
<i>Technology</i>	The cellular technology in use (e.g., 5G, LTE, UMTS, GPRS).
<i>PLMN</i>	The Public Land Mobile Network code, a unique identifier for the mobile operator.
<i>Cell</i>	The hexadecimal ID of the cell tower to which the router is currently connected.
<i>LAC/TAC</i>	The Location Area Code (for 2G/3G) or Tracking Area Code (for 4G/5G), which identifies the current location area of the device within the network.
<i>Channel</i>	The specific radio frequency channel number being used (e.g., ARFCN, UARFCN, EARFCN).
<i>Band</i>	The frequency band being used for the connection (e.g., LTE Band 20).
Signal Quality	
<i>Signal Strength</i>	The primary signal strength metric (RSCP for UMTS, RSRP for LTE/5G, RSSI for GPRS). The value is color-coded for quick assessment: good (black), fair (orange), or poor (red). See Table 11 for detailed ranges.
<i>Signal Quality</i>	The primary signal quality metric (EC/IO for UMTS, RSRQ for LTE/5G). Not available for GPRS/EDGE.
<i>RSSI, RSRP, RSRQ, SINR</i>	Additional signal metrics providing deeper insight into connection quality. Availability depends on the module and technology.
<i>CSQ</i>	A simplified signal quality indicator from 0 to 31, where a higher value indicates better signal.
<i>Neighbours</i>	A list of neighboring cell signals, which can be useful for diagnostics (available only in GPRS mode on certain models).
Module Information	
<i>Manufacturer, Model, Revision</i>	Identifying details for the installed cellular module.
<i>Firmware Release</i>	Displays the full version string of the firmware currently running on the cellular module. This identifier is used for managing Firmware Over-The-Air (FOTA) updates for the module itself.
<i>IMEI / MEID</i>	The unique identifier for the cellular module hardware.
<i>ICCID</i>	The unique serial number of the inserted SIM card.
<i>IMSI</i>	The International Mobile Subscriber Identity, a unique number that identifies the SIM card on the mobile network.
<i>SMS Center</i>	The phone number of the Short Message Service Center (SMSC) provided by the mobile operator.

Table 10: Mobile network information details

The following table provides a general guide for interpreting signal strength values.

Signal Level	2G/3G (RSSI/RSCP)	4G (RSRP)	5G (RSRP)
Good	> -75 dBm	> -90 dBm	> -90 dBm
Fair	-75 dBm to -94 dBm	-90 dBm to -109 dBm	-90 dBm to -119 dBm
Poor	< -94 dBm	< -109 dBm	< -119 dBm

Table 11: Signal strength value ranges

Periods

Period	Description
<i>Today</i>	Today from 0:00 to 23:59.
<i>Yesterday</i>	Yesterday from 0:00 to 23:59.
<i>This week</i>	This week from Monday 0:00 to Sunday 23:59.
<i>Last week</i>	Last week from Monday 0:00 to Sunday 23:59.
<i>This period</i>	This accounting period.
<i>Last period</i>	Last accounting period.

Table 12: Time period definitions

Connection Statistics

This section provides usage and performance data for each SIM card over various time periods. The accounting periods can be customized on the *Configuration* → *Mobile WAN* page.

Item	Description
<i>RX / TX data</i>	The total volume of data received (RX) and transmitted (TX).
<i>Connections</i>	The total number of successful network connections.
<i>Signal Min / Avg / Max</i>	The minimum, average, and maximum signal strength recorded. Hovering over the Min/Max values will display a timestamp of their last occurrence.
<i>Cells</i>	The number of times the router has switched between cell towers.
<i>Availability</i>	The percentage of time the router has been successfully connected to the network since the SIM was activated.

Table 13: Mobile network statistics details

Connection Log

This section displays a detailed, real-time log of events related to the mobile network connection. It is an invaluable tool for troubleshooting, as it records the step-by-step process of network registration and clearly indicates any errors encountered.

2.3 Wi-Fi

2.3.1 Status

The *Status* → *Wi-Fi* page displays the current operational status of the Wi-Fi module and all configured interfaces, including Access Point (AP) and Station (STA) modes.

The screenshot displays the 'Wi-Fi Status' page with a 'refresh' button in the top right corner. The page is divided into three main sections:

- WiFi Module Information:**
 - Chip : Texas Instruments WL1837
 - Firmware : Rev 8.9.0.0.88
 - Supports : 1 station and 1 access point, or 2 access points
- WiFi AP 1 Status:**
 - Common AP Information:**
 - bssid=78:a5:04:26:93:a2
 - ssid=PrivateNet
 - wpa=2
 - key_mgmt=SAE
 - group_cipher=CCMP
 - rsn_pairwise_cipher=CCMP
 - Information of One Connected Station:**
 - 94:e3:6d:98:48:9d
 - flags=[AUTH][ASSOC][AUTHORIZED][SHORT_PREAMBLE]
 - capability=0x431
 - listen_interval=20
 - supported_rates=02 04 0b 16
 - wpa=2
 - AKMSuiteSelector=00-0f-ac-8
 - rx_packets=22
 - tx_packets=7
 - rx_bytes=2498
 - tx_bytes=1325
 - inactive_msec=1070
 - signal=0
 - rx_rate_info=110
 - tx_rate_info=10
 - connected_time=18
 - sae_group=19
 - sae_rejected_groups=
 - supp_op_classes=5151525354737475767778797a7b7c7d7e7f
 - ext_capab=0400000000000000
- WiFi AP 2 Status:**
 - AP status is not available.
- WiFi STA Status:**
 - STA status is not available.

Figure 3: Wi-Fi AP status page

Wi-Fi Module Information

This section provides hardware-specific details about the installed Wi-Fi module.

Item	Description
<i>Chip</i>	The model of the Wi-Fi chipset.
<i>Firmware</i>	The version of the firmware running on the Wi-Fi module.
<i>Supports</i>	Lists the number of simultaneous interfaces the module can handle. For example, <i>1 station and 2 access points</i> indicates that the router can act as a client to one network while concurrently operating two separate access point interfaces.

Table 14: Wi-Fi module information

Wi-Fi AP Status

The *WiFi AP 1 Status* and *WiFi AP 2 Status* sections display information about the Wi-Fi interfaces operating in Access Point mode. As shown in Figure 3, this includes common AP settings followed by a list of connected stations (clients). Each block of connected station data begins with the client's MAC address, followed by the items described in the table below.

Column/Item	Description
Common AP Information	
<i>bssid</i>	The MAC address of the Wi-Fi access point interface.
<i>ssid</i>	The Service Set Identifier (network name) broadcast by the access point.
<i>wpa</i>	Indicates the WPA standard version bitmask currently in use (e.g., 2 indicates support for WPA2/RSN standards). Note that WPA3 also utilizes the RSN framework; to distinguish between WPA2 and WPA3, refer to the <i>key_mgmt</i> field.
<i>key_mgmt</i>	The Key Management Method used for authentication. Common values include <i>WPA2-PSK</i> (WPA2 Personal) and <i>SAE</i> (WPA3 Personal).
<i>group_cipher</i>	The encryption protocol used for broadcast and multicast traffic within the network (e.g., <i>CCMP</i> , <i>TKIP</i>).
<i>rsn_pairwise_cipher</i>	Encryption protocol used for unicast traffic (e.g., <i>CCMP</i>).
Connected Station Information	
<i>[MAC Address]</i>	The MAC address of the connected client device.
<i>flags</i>	Connection flags indicating current state (e.g., <i>[AUTH]</i> , <i>[ASSOC]</i> , <i>[AUTHORIZED]</i>).
<i>capability</i>	A hexadecimal bitmask indicating the station's advertised capabilities (e.g., support for ESS, IBSS, Privacy, Short Preamble) as defined in the IEEE 802.11 standard.
<i>listen_interval</i>	The number of beacon intervals for which the station may enter power-saving mode (sleep) before waking up to receive beacon frames.
<i>supported_rates</i>	A list of data transmission rates (in Mbps or hexadecimal representation) that the station supports.
<i>wpa</i>	Indicates the WPA standard version currently in use for this connection (e.g., 2 indicates support for WPA2/RSN standards). Note that WPA3 also utilizes the RSN framework.
<i>AKMSuiteSelector</i>	The Authentication and Key Management suite selector used. It identifies the authentication method (e.g., <i>00-0f-ac-8</i> for SAE/WPA3 or <i>00-0f-ac-2</i> for WPA2-PSK).

Table 15: Wi-Fi AP status details

Item	Description
<i>rx_packets</i>	Number of packets received from this station.
<i>tx_packets</i>	Number of packets transmitted to this station.
<i>rx_bytes</i>	Number of bytes received from this station.
<i>tx_bytes</i>	Number of bytes transmitted to this station.
<i>inactive_msec</i>	The time in milliseconds since the last data packet was received from the station. A lower value indicates an active connection.
<i>signal</i>	Signal strength of the connected station (in dBm).
<i>rx_rate_info</i>	Information about the last received data rate from the station (e.g., bitrate index or MCS index).
<i>tx_rate_info</i>	Information about the last transmitted data rate to the station (e.g., bitrate index or MCS index).
<i>connected_time</i>	Duration of the current connection in seconds.
<i>sae_group</i>	The Diffie-Hellman group (ECC curve) used during the WPA3 SAE handshake (e.g., 19 for NIST P-256). Only applicable when WPA3 (SAE) is used.
<i>sae_rejected_groups</i>	A list of SAE groups that were proposed but rejected during the handshake process.
<i>supp_op_classes</i>	Supported Operating Classes. A hexadecimal string listing the frequency bands and channel behaviors the station supports.
<i>ext_capab</i>	Extended Capabilities. A hexadecimal bitfield indicating support for advanced features (e.g., BSS Transition, WNM) beyond the standard capability field.

Table 15: Wi-Fi AP status details (continued)

Wi-Fi STA Status

The *WiFi STA Status* section displays information about the Wi-Fi interface operating in Station (Client) mode.

The screenshot shows the 'WiFi Status' page with a 'refresh' button in the top right corner. The page is divided into three main sections:

- WiFi Module Information:**
 - Chip : Texas Instruments WL1837
 - Firmware : Rev 8.9.0.0.88
 - Supports : 1 station and 1 access point, or 2 access points
- WiFi AP 1 Status:**

AP status is not available.
- WiFi AP 2 Status:**

AP status is not available.
- WiFi STA Status:**

```
bssid=78:a5:04:26:93:a2
freq=2472
ssid=PrivateNet
id=0
mode=station
pairwise_cipher=CCMP
group_cipher=CCMP
key_mgmt=SAE
sae_group=19
sae_h2e=1
sae_pk=0
wpa_state=COMPLETED
ip_address=192.168.100.10
address=94:e3:6d:98:48:9d
ssid_verified=1
```

Figure 4: Wi-Fi STA status page

Item	Description
<i>bssid</i>	The MAC address of the Access Point to which the station is connected.
<i>freq</i>	The operating frequency (channel) in MHz (e.g., 2472 corresponds to channel 13).
<i>ssid</i>	The name of the Wi-Fi network the station is connected to.
<i>id</i>	The internal numeric identifier of the configured network profile in the wpa_supplicant.
<i>mode</i>	Operation mode (<i>station</i>).
<i>pairwise_cipher</i>	The encryption protocol used for unicast data traffic between the station and the access point (e.g., <i>CCMP</i> , <i>GCMP</i> , <i>TKIP</i>).
<i>group_cipher</i>	The encryption protocol used for broadcast and multicast traffic within the network (e.g., <i>CCMP</i> , <i>TKIP</i>).

Table 16: Wi-Fi STA status details

Item	Description
<i>key_mgmt</i>	The Key Management protocol used for authentication. Common values include <i>WPA-PSK</i> (WPA2 Personal) and <i>SAE</i> (WPA3 Personal).
<i>sae_group</i>	The Diffie-Hellman group (ECC curve) used during the WPA3 SAE handshake (e.g., <i>19</i> for NIST P-256). Only applicable when WPA3 (SAE) is used.
<i>sae_h2e</i>	Indicates if the "Hash-to-Element" method was used for SAE password derivation. <i>1</i> means H2E was used (mandatory for WPA3 in 6 GHz), <i>0</i> means the older "Hunting-and-Pecking" loop method was used.
<i>sae_pk</i>	Indicates if SAE Public Key (SAE-PK) authentication was used. <i>1</i> means SAE-PK was used to cryptographically bind the SSID to the password (preventing rogue APs), <i>0</i> means standard SAE was used.
<i>wpa_state</i>	The current state of the connection. <i>COMPLETED</i> indicates a successful connection. States like <i>SCANNING</i> or <i>DISCONNECTED</i> imply the router is searching for a network or cannot connect (check credentials or signal).
<i>ip_address</i>	The IP address assigned to the station interface, either obtained dynamically from a DHCP server or configured statically.
<i>address</i>	The MAC address of the router's Wi-Fi station interface.
<i>ssid_verified</i>	Indicates if the SSID has been verified (e.g., <i>1</i> for true). Only applicable when WPA3 (SAE) is used.

Table 16: Wi-Fi STA status details (continued)

2.3.2 Scan

The *Status* → *Wi-Fi* → *Scan* page allows you to discover all nearby Wi-Fi networks. The results are displayed in a list, showing the key parameters of each detected network.

WiFi Scan					
List of BSSs on STA1					
b4:fb:e4:4e:27:3b		Connect	Ch36/5GHz	WPA2-PSK/AES	workbench5GHz
» More Information «					
ba:fb:e4:4d:26:c8		Connect	Ch1/2.4GHz	WPA2-PSK/AES	AdvantechGuest
» More Information «					
10:08:2c:55:60:a5		Connect	Ch6/2.4GHz	WPA2-PSK/AES	workbench
» More Information «					
8c:8b:83:75:0f:b7		Connect	Ch1/2.4GHz	WPA2-PSK/AES	advantech
» More Information «					

Figure 5: Wi-Fi scan results

The list is structured into several columns, and each entry provides a *Connect* button and a link to view *More Information*.

Column/Item	Description
<i>BSS</i>	The MAC address of the detected access point.
<i>Signal Icon</i>	A visual representation of the signal strength. More bars indicate a stronger signal.
<i>Connect button</i>	Clicking this button redirects you to the <i>Configuration</i> → <i>Wi-Fi</i> → <i>Station</i> page with the selected network's details pre-filled, allowing you to easily connect by entering the password.
<i>Channel/Band</i>	The channel number and frequency band the network is operating on.
<i>Security</i>	The security protocol and encryption method used by the network (e.g., WPA2-PSK/AES).
<i>SSID</i>	The public name of the Wi-Fi network.
<i>More Information</i>	Clicking this link expands a section with detailed technical parameters of the access point, intended for advanced diagnostics.

Table 17: Wi-Fi scan results description

2.4 Network

To view detailed information about network interfaces, routing tables, and active connections, navigate to the *Status* → *Network* page. The upper part of the page displays details for all active network interfaces, followed by the IPv4 and IPv6 routing tables.

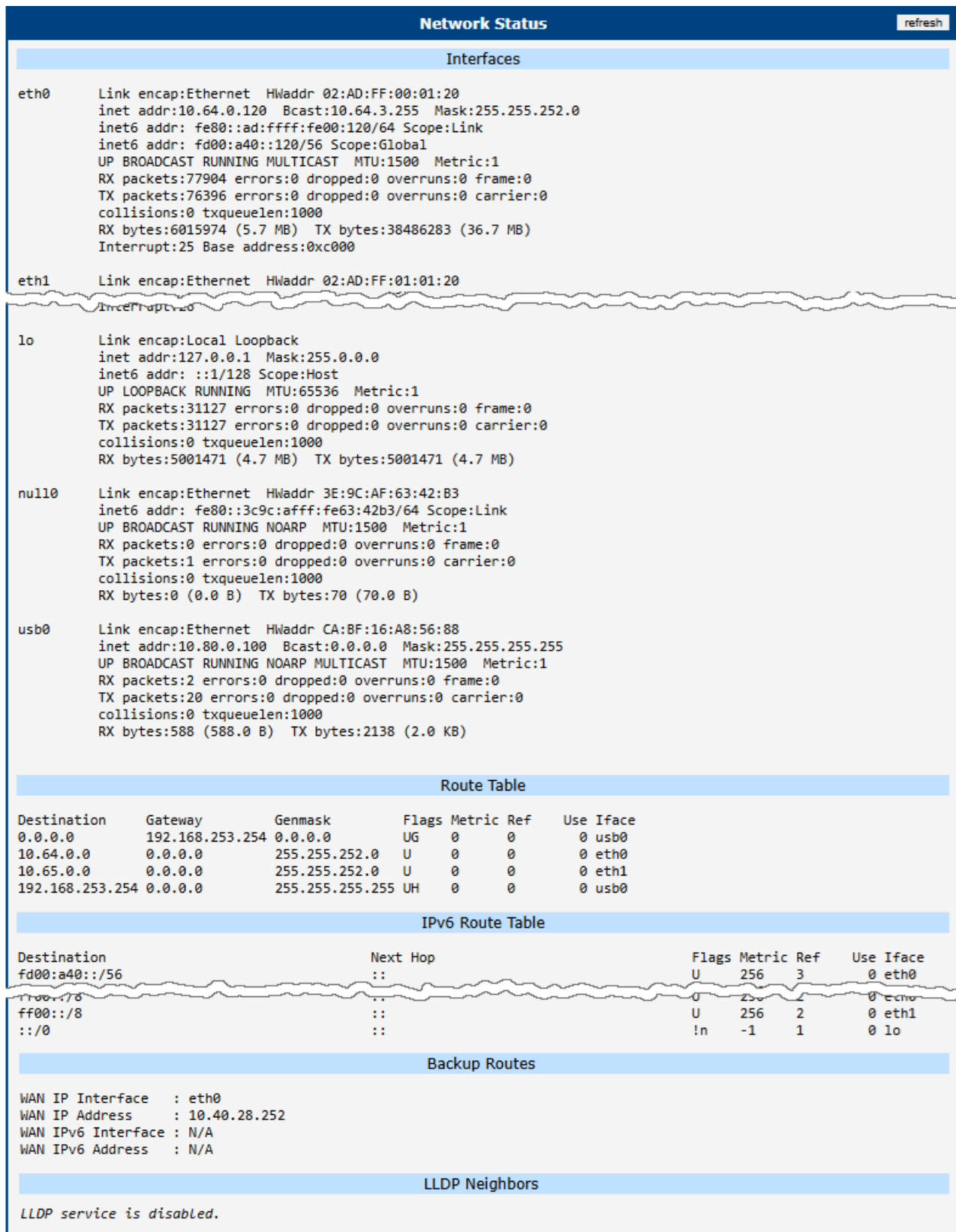


Figure 6: Network status page overview

Interfaces

This section provides an overview of all active network interfaces on the router. For each interface, it displays essential information such as assigned IP addresses, MAC address, and traffic statistics (received and transmitted data). In the table below, the *X* in an interface name represents its zero-indexed instance number. The availability of specific interfaces depends on the router model and its configuration.

Interface	Description
<i>ethX</i>	A physical Ethernet interface directly connected to the CPU. The index <i>X</i> identifies the interface instance (e.g., <i>eth0</i> , <i>eth1</i>).
<i>vlanX</i>	A logical VLAN interface. The index <i>X</i> is an internal interface number and does not match the configured VLAN ID. The actual VLAN ID is defined separately and mapped to this logical interface.
<i>lo</i>	The virtual loopback interface used for internal communication within the router.
<i>null0</i>	A virtual interface used by the NAT64 translator. Traffic routed to this interface is discarded.
<i>usb0</i> , <i>usb1</i>	Interfaces representing the cellular WAN connections for the first or second modem module. These interfaces are connected internally via the USB bus.
<i>wlanX</i>	A Wi-Fi interface, where <i>X</i> identifies the physical radio or a virtual access point instance.
<i>pppoeX</i>	A virtual interface for a PPPoE session, where <i>X</i> is the instance number.
<i>tunX</i>	A virtual interface for an OpenVPN tunnel, where <i>X</i> is the tunnel instance number (0–3).
<i>ipsecX</i>	A virtual interface for an IPsec tunnel, where <i>X</i> is the tunnel instance number (0–3).
<i>wgX</i>	A virtual interface for a WireGuard tunnel, where <i>X</i> is the tunnel instance number (0–3).
<i>greX</i>	A virtual interface for a GRE tunnel, where <i>X</i> is the tunnel instance number (0–3).
<i>l2tp0</i>	A virtual interface for an L2TP tunnel. Only one instance is supported.
<i>pptp0</i>	A virtual interface for a PPTP tunnel. Only one instance is supported.

Table 18: Common interface types

Each active interface provides a detailed summary of its status and traffic statistics. The parameters are described below.

Parameter	Description
<i>HWaddr</i>	The hardware Media Access Control (MAC) address of the interface.
<i>inet addr</i>	The primary IPv4 address assigned to the interface.
<i>inet6 addr</i>	The primary IPv6 address assigned to the interface. An interface may have multiple IPv6 addresses.
<i>P-t-P</i>	For a point-to-point link, this is the IP address of the remote peer.
<i>Bcast</i>	The broadcast address for the interface's subnet.
<i>Mask</i>	The subnet mask associated with the IPv4 address.
<i>MTU</i>	The Maximum Transmission Unit, indicating the largest packet size (in bytes) that the interface can transmit without fragmentation.
<i>Metric</i>	A value used by the routing table to determine the cost of a route. Lower values are preferred.
<i>RX/TX packets</i>	The total count of packets received (RX) and transmitted (TX) by the interface.
<i>Errors</i>	A count of errors that occurred during reception or transmission.
<i>Dropped</i>	The number of packets that were dropped during reception or transmission, often due to a lack of buffer space.
<i>Overruns</i>	The number of packets lost due to buffer overloads.
<i>Frame</i>	The number of received packets dropped due to framing errors (e.g., incorrect checksums).
<i>Carrier</i>	The number of transmission errors related to the physical layer carrier signal.
<i>Collisions</i>	The number of packet collisions detected on the physical medium.
<i>txqueuelen</i>	The current length of the transmission queue for the interface.
<i>RX/TX bytes</i>	The total volume of data in bytes received (RX) and transmitted (TX).

Table 19: Interface parameter descriptions

Routing Tables

The middle of the page shows the kernel routing tables. Both the IPv4 *Route Table* and the IPv6 *Route Table* are displayed. Below the main routing tables, the *Backup Routes* section lists any currently active backup routes.

If NAT64 is enabled (in *Configuration* → *NAT* → *IPv6*), it is automatically used for communication between IPv6 and IPv4 networks. This works with the router's DNS64 service, which synthesizes AAAA records from A records. When active, a route for the default NAT64 prefix, `64:ff9b::/96`, will be visible in the *IPv6 Route Table*, as shown in Figure 6.

Backup Routes

This section identifies the active primary WAN interface and its corresponding IP address for both IPv4 and IPv6 Internet traffic. The status shown here directly reflects the router's automatic failover system (detailed in Chapter 3.7 *Backup Routes*), which operates independently of the main routing table. When the primary connection fails, the router automatically switches to a backup interface, and that change is immediately displayed here. The table below describes the status parameters displayed in this section:

Parameter	Description
WAN IP Interface	Displays the network interface (e.g., eth0, usb0) currently providing the primary outbound path for all IPv4 traffic. If no connection is active, this shows N/A.
WAN IP Address	Displays the current IPv4 address assigned to the active WAN interface.
WAN IPv6 Interface	Displays the network interface currently providing the primary outbound path for all IPv6 traffic. If no connection is active, this shows N/A.
WAN IPv6 Address	Displays the current IPv6 address assigned to the active WAN IPv6 interface.

Table 20: Backup routes status parameters

LLDP Neighbors

This section displays information about directly connected network devices discovered via the Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP). For this section to be populated, the LLDP service must be enabled in the router's configuration (detailed in Chapter 3.18.5 *LLDP*).

By default, the page provides a concise summary of all detected neighbors, displaying essential information such as the local interface, the neighbor's MAC address (**ChassisID**), system name (**SysName**), and basic port details. To view extensive diagnostic data for these devices—such as hardware descriptions, management IP addresses, device capabilities, and Power over Ethernet (PoE/MDI) parameters—click the » *More Information* « link at the bottom of the list. The following example shows the extended information belonging to an Advantech ICR-3232 router:

Interface: eth1, via: LLDP, RID: 2, Time: 0 day, 01:03:07

Chassis:

ChassisID: mac 00:11:22:33:44:55

SysName: Router

SysDescr: ICR-323x 6.6.1 (2026-02-11, commit 2f2ad43db9b08bc71c5d5efe0cf64dfdb0910ff1) #3559

MgmtIP: 192.168.1.10

MgmtIface: 9

MgmtIP: fe80::85f:aff:febc:7b1e

MgmtIface: 11

Capability: Bridge, off

Capability: Router, on

Capability: Wlan, off

Capability: Station, off

Port:

PortID: mac 00:11:22:33:44:55

PortDescr: eth0

TTL: 20

PMD autoneg: supported: yes, enabled: yes

Adv: 10Base-T, HD: yes, FD: yes

Adv: 100Base-TX, HD: yes, FD: yes

MAU oper type: 100BaseTXFD - 2 pair category 5 UTP, full duplex mode

Info

The structure and meaning of LLDP data units (TLVs) are defined by the **IEEE 802.1AB** standard. For more information about the protocol, visit the official IEEE 802.1 working group page at ieee802.org/1/pages/802.1ab.html. Full versions of IEEE standards are typically accessible through the *IEEE GET program*.

2.5 DHCP

To view information about DHCP server activity, navigate to *Status* → *DHCP*. The router's DHCP server automatically provides network configuration to client devices. For each client, it assigns an IP address, subnet mask, default gateway, and DNS server. The router supports both DHCPv4 and DHCPv6 servers.

The *DHCP Status* page lists all active IP address leases, grouped by the interface they are associated with (e.g., *LAN*, *WiFi AP 1*). If no leases are active on an interface or the server is disabled for that interface, a corresponding message is displayed.

DHCP Status					refresh
Active DHCP Leases (LAN)					
IPv4 Address	Lease Starts	Lease Ends	MAC	Hostname	
192.168.2.2	2022-06-14 11:16:30	2022-06-14 11:26:30	aa:bb:cc:dd:ee:ff	"PETA-NB"	
IPv6 Address	Lease Starts	Lease Ends	IA-NA		
2001:db8::10	2022-06-14 11:20:27	2022-06-14 11:30:27	\235{P\006\000\001\000\001%y\030DP{\235\246SK		
Active DHCP Leases (WiFi AP 1)					
IPv4 Address	Lease Starts	Lease Ends	MAC	Hostname	
192.168.2.2	2022-06-14 11:30:55	2022-06-14 11:40:55	aa:bb:cc:dd:ee:ff	"Galaxy-S10"	
No active dynamic DHCPv6 Leases.					
Active DHCP Leases (WiFi AP 2)					
DHCP server is disabled.					

Figure 7: DHCP status page

The table below describes the information provided for each active lease.

Column	Description
IPv4 Address	The IPv4 address assigned to the client.
IPv6 Address	The IPv6 address assigned to the client.
Lease Starts	The date and time when the IP address lease began.
Lease Ends	The date and time when the IP address lease will expire.
MAC	The unique MAC address of the client device (applies to IPv4 leases).
Hostname	The hostname of the client device (applies to IPv4 leases).
IA-NA	Identity Association for Non-temporary Addresses. A unique DHCPv6 identifier for the client's address assignment (applies to IPv6 leases).

Table 21: DHCP status column descriptions

Info

The DHCP status may occasionally display two records for one IP address. This can be caused by a client's network interface being reset.

2.6 IPsec

To check the status of configured IPsec tunnels, navigate to the *Status* → *IPsec* page. This page displays a log of the IPsec connection status.

For a successfully established tunnel, the log will contain the keyword **ESTABLISHED**. Additionally, the status summary will show the number of active connections, such as **1 up**, as highlighted in the figure below.

If the log does not show these indicators (e.g., it shows **0 up**), the IPsec tunnel has not been successfully established.

The screenshot shows the 'IPsec Status' page with a 'refresh' button. The main section is titled 'IPsec Tunnels Information'. It displays the status of the IKE charon daemon (weakSwan 5.5.3, Linux 3.12.10+, armv7l) with details like uptime (26 minutes), memory usage, worker threads, and loaded plugins. It also lists listening IP addresses (192.168.1.1, 2001:10:7:6::1, 10.0.0.228) and connections. A purple box highlights the 'Security Associations (1 up, 0 connecting):' section, which shows an 'ESTABLISHED' status for a tunnel between 10.0.0.228 and 10.0.2.250. Below this, it lists IKEv2 SPIs, pre-shared key reauthentication details, and IKE proposal information.

```

IPsec Status refresh

IPsec Tunnels Information

Status of IKE charon daemon (weakSwan 5.5.3, Linux 3.12.10+, armv7l):
  uptime: 26 minutes, since Nov 09 10:26:10 2017
  malloc: sbrk 528384, mmap 0, used 123104, free 405280
  worker threads: 11 of 16 idle, 5/0/0/0 working, job queue: 0/0/0/0, scheduled: 5
  loaded plugins: charon nonce pem openssl kernel-netlink socket-default stroke updown
Listening IP addresses:
  192.168.1.1
  2001:10:7:6::1
  10.0.0.228
Connections:
  ipsec1: 10.0.0.228...%any IKEv2, dpddelay=20s
  ipsec1: local: [10.0.0.228] uses pre-shared key authentication
  ipsec1: remote: uses pre-shared key authentication
  ipsec1: child: 2001:10:7:6::/64 === 1999:10:7:5::/64 TUNNEL, dodaction=clear
Security Associations (1 up, 0 connecting):
  ipsec1[2]: ESTABLISHED 17 minutes ago, 10.0.0.228[10.0.0.228]...10.0.2.250[10.0.2.250]
  ipsec1[2]: IKEv2 SPIs: 7e675f07f05d7434_i 8625de2fc6f84049_r*, pre-shared key reauthentication in 28 minutes
  ipsec1[2]: IKE proposal: AES_CBC_128/HMAC_SHA2_256_128/PRF_HMAC_SHA2_256/MOOP_3072
  ipsec1{2}: INSTALLED, TUNNEL, reqid 2, ESP SPIs: c7247a03_i c29f5287_o
  ipsec1{2}: AES_CBC_128/HMAC_SHA1_96, 0 bytes_i, 0 bytes_o, rekeying in 30 minutes
  ipsec1{2}: 2001:10:7:6::/64 === 1999:10:7:5::/64
  
```

Figure 8: IPsec status

2.7 WireGuard

To check the status of configured WireGuard tunnels, navigate to the *Status* → *WireGuard* page. This page displays the current operational state and statistics for each active WireGuard interface.

The figure below shows an example of a running WireGuard tunnel.

The screenshot shows the 'WireGuard Tunnel Status' page with a 'refresh' button in the top right. It contains four sections for tunnel information:

- 1st WireGuard Tunnel Information:**

```

interface: wg1
public key: Zu5pZz4h05xUDGvcFN9ULr2W0oxzcL6V4Hi+WkyE63E=
private key: (hidden)
listening port: 51820

peer: sHvm8R8HLQM7hRtmD+/VA8c5aIuDPgfnwq371+0gMVM=
endpoint: 192.168.7.231:51820
allowed ips: 10.0.0.0/30, 192.168.133.0/24
latest handshake: 1 minute, 55 seconds ago
transfer: 1.44 KiB received, 5.28 KiB sent
persistent keepalive: every 25 seconds

```
- 2nd WireGuard Tunnel Information:**

WireGuard is disabled.
- 3rd WireGuard Tunnel Information:**

WireGuard is disabled.
- 4th WireGuard Tunnel Information:**

WireGuard is disabled.

Figure 9: WireGuard status page

The status page displays the following information for each peer connected to a WireGuard interface.

Parameter	Description
<i>Interface</i>	The name of the WireGuard interface on the router (e.g., wg0).
<i>Public key</i>	The public key of the connected peer.
<i>Allowed ips</i>	The IP addresses from which this peer is allowed to send traffic through the tunnel.
<i>Latest handshake</i>	The time elapsed since the last successful handshake with the peer. A handshake confirms a secure connection. This time is only displayed after data has been exchanged, either from regular traffic or a keepalive packet (if enabled).
<i>Transfer</i>	The total amount of data received (rx) and transmitted (tx) through the tunnel for this peer.

Table 22: WireGuard status parameter descriptions

2.8 Dynamic DNS

The Dynamic DNS service allows you to access your router using a fixed domain name even when its public IP address changes. To view the service's current status, navigate to the *Status* → *Dynamic DNS* page.

Warning

For the Dynamic DNS service to function correctly, the router's mobile connection must be assigned a public IP address by your cellular provider.

The router is compatible with several third-party Dynamic DNS providers and supports standard update protocols, including DynDNS (HTTP API) and DDNS (RFC 2136). You can configure the service to use providers such as:

- freedns.afraid.org
- www.duckdns.org
- www.noip.com

IPv6 updates can be used when *IP Mode* is set to *IPv6* on the *Services* → *Dynamic DNS* configuration page. The status page displays messages that indicate the current state of the Dynamic DNS client and its communication with the provider.

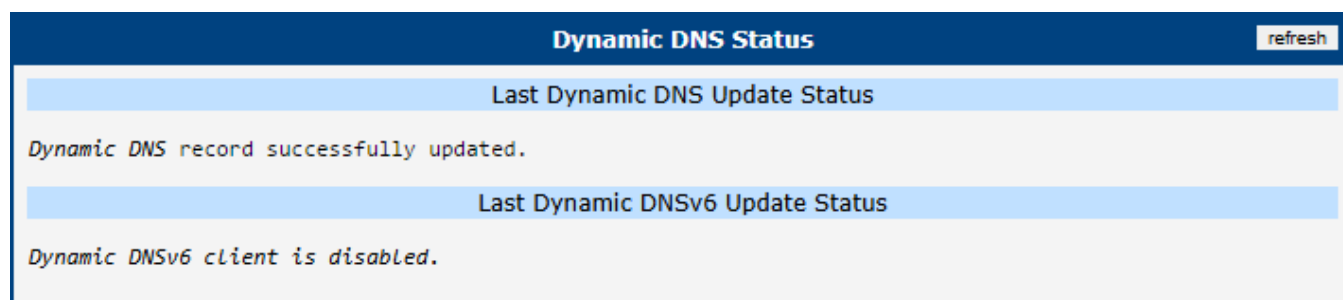


Figure 10: Dynamic DNS status page

The table below lists the possible messages you may encounter.

Status Message
Dynamic DNS client is disabled.
Invalid username or password.
Specified hostname doesn't exist.
Invalid hostname format.
Hostname exists, but not under specified username.
No update performed since startup.
DNS error encountered.
DynDNS record is already up to date.
DynDNS record successfully updated.
DynDNS system parameter is not valid.
DynDNS server failure.
Last reported IP was [IP address] on [datetime].
Last report to Dynamic DNS server is unknown.
Dynamic DNSv6 client is disabled.
Update require paid account.
Hostname is blocked for update abuse.

Table 23: Dynamic DNS status messages

2.9 Connections

The *Status* → *Connections* page displays a real-time list of all active network connections passing through the router. This overview is particularly useful for monitoring current network traffic and troubleshooting routing or connectivity issues.

Connections					refresh
Protocol	Source Address	Source Port	Destination Address	Destination Port	
tcp	10.64.0.1	49566	10.64.0.130	443	
tcp	10.64.0.1	49565	10.64.0.130	443	
tcp	10.64.0.1	49557	10.64.0.130	443	
tcp	10.64.0.1	49563	10.64.0.130	443	
tcp	10.64.0.1	49564	10.64.0.130	443	
tcp	10.64.0.1	49559	10.64.0.130	443	
tcp	10.64.0.1	49570	10.64.0.130	443	
tcp	10.64.0.1	49569	10.64.0.130	443	
tcp	10.64.0.1	49561	10.64.0.130	443	
tcp	10.64.0.1	49560	10.64.0.130	443	
tcp	10.64.0.1	49553	10.64.0.130	443	
tcp	10.64.0.1	49571	10.64.0.130	443	
tcp	10.64.0.1	49567	10.64.0.130	443	
tcp	10.64.0.1	49572	10.64.0.130	443	
tcp	10.64.0.1	49568	10.64.0.130	443	
tcp	10.64.0.1	49562	10.64.0.130	443	

Figure 11: List of active network connections

The table below describes the information provided in each column of the connections list.

Column	Description
<i>Protocol</i>	The transport layer protocol used for the connection (e.g., TCP, UDP, or ICMP).
<i>Source Address</i>	The originating IP address of the network connection.
<i>Source Port</i>	The originating port number of the connection.
<i>Destination Address</i>	The target IP address of the network connection.
<i>Destination Port</i>	The target port number of the connection.

Table 24: Description of columns in the connections list

2.10 Router Apps

The *Status* → *Router Apps* page provides a quick overview of all Router Apps currently installed on the router. This summary allows administrators to easily verify the operational state of each application without needing to navigate to the primary configuration menu of every single Router App.

As shown in the figure below, the page lists each installed Router App and clearly indicates its current status (e.g., whether the application is actively running or currently stopped).

Router Apps Status		refresh
FOTA		
Application fota is stopped		
Pinger		
Module pinger is running		
Sleep Mode		
Module sleepmode is running		
USR LED Management		
Module usrled_mgmt is stopped		
Web Terminal		
Module Web Terminal is running		

Figure 12: Router Apps status page

2.11 System Log

To view the router's operational logs, navigate to the *Status* → *System Log* page. This page displays messages generated by the router's operating system and various services.

Info

For security, sensitive data such as passwords is automatically filtered out from the system log and diagnostic reports.

The level of detail in the log is controlled by the *Minimum Severity* setting on the *Configuration* → *Services* → *Syslog* page.

The router manages log storage to prevent files from growing indefinitely. By default, the active log file is limited to 10 KiB. When it reaches this size, it is rotated: the file is renamed to a backup file, and a new, empty log file starts collecting new entries. On the next rotation, the backup is overwritten, so at most two generations of logs (current plus one backup) are kept on disk. The *Log Size Limit* can be adjusted on the Syslog configuration page.

The *System Log* page provides several options for downloading diagnostic information:

- **Save Log:** Downloads the current contents of the system log as a plain text file (`*.log`).
- **Save Report:** Generates and downloads a comprehensive diagnostic report file (`*.txt`), which is essential for troubleshooting and providing to technical support. The report always contains the following information:
 - General system information and status
 - Network statistics and current routing tables
 - A list of all running processes
 - Filesystem usage information
 - The complete system log

Note: For users logged in with the *Admin* role, the report will additionally include a copy of the current (non-sensitive) router configuration. This section is omitted for standard users.

- **Save Diagnostic Data:** Downloads a compressed archive (`*.gz`) containing detailed data from the last system failure. This button is **only visible to users with the Admin role** and is only enabled when a system crash dump is present. The data is intended for advanced analysis by technical support.

System Log
refresh

System Messages

```

2013-07-02 12:46:19 pppsd[426]: module is turned on
2013-07-02 12:46:19 pppsd[426]: selected SIM: 1st
2013-07-02 12:46:19 dnsmasq[453]: started, version 2.59 cachesize 150
2013-07-02 12:46:19 dnsmasq[453]: cleared cache
2013-07-02 12:46:19 bard[455]: bard started
2013-07-02 12:46:19 pppsd[426]: selected APN: connection.com
2013-07-02 12:46:19 pppsd[426]: waiting for registration
2013-07-02 12:46:20 pppsd[426]: starting usbd
2013-07-02 12:46:20 usbd[500]: usbd started
2013-07-02 12:46:20 usbd[500]: establishing connection
2013-07-02 12:46:20 sshd[506]: Server listening on 0.0.0.0 port 22.
2013-07-02 12:46:29 usbd[500]: connection established
2013-07-02 12:46:29 usbd[500]: local IP address 10.0.1.229
2013-07-02 12:46:29 usbd[500]: primary   DNS address 10.0.0.1
2013-07-02 12:46:29 bard[455]: backup route selected: "Mobile WAN"

```

Save Log
Save Report
Save Diagnostic Data

Figure 13: System log page

3. Configuration

3.1 Ethernet

To configure the Local Area Network (LAN), navigate to the *Ethernet* menu item in the *Configuration* section. Expanding the *Ethernet* menu on the left allows you to select the appropriate Ethernet interface for configuration: *ETH0* for the first Ethernet interface, *ETH1* for the second Ethernet interface, and *ETH2* for the third Ethernet interface (if the router has a 3-port Ethernet SWITCH or RS232-RS485-ETH interface).

This configuration page is divided into IPv4 and IPv6 sections. The router supports dual-stack operation, meaning IPv4 and IPv6 can run concurrently. You can configure either one or both. When both IPv4 and IPv6 are enabled, network devices automatically select the appropriate protocol. The configuration options for IPv4 and IPv6 are described in the following tables.

ETH0 Configuration			
☒ Enable Port			
	IPv4	IPv6	
DHCP Client	disabled	disabled	
IP Address	192.168.1.1		
Subnet Mask / Prefix	255.255.255.0		
Default Gateway			
Primary DNS Server			
Secondary DNS Server			
Bridged	no		
MTU	1500	bytes	576-1500 bytes
Media Type	auto-negotiation		
PoE PSE	disabled		
☒ Enable dynamic DHCP leases			
	IPv4	IPv6	
IP Pool Start	192.168.1.2		
IP Pool End	192.168.1.254		
Lease Time	600	600	sec
☐ Enable static DHCP leases			
	MAC Address	IP Address	IPv6 Address
1			
2			
Maximum 32 items			
☐ Enable IPv6 prefix delegation			
Subnet ID *			
Subnet ID Width *		bits	

Figure 14: LAN configuration page

☐ Enable IPv6 prefix delegation

Subnet ID *

Subnet ID Width * bits

☐ Enable IEEE 802.1X Authentication

Authentication Method EAP-PEAP/MSCHAPv2 ▼

CA Certificate

No file chosen

Local Certificate

No file chosen

Local Private Key

No file chosen

Identity

Password

* can be blank

Figure 15: LAN configuration page

Item	Description
<i>Enable Port</i>	Enables or disables the physical Ethernet port.
<i>DHCP Client</i>	Enables or disables the DHCP client function. In the IPv6 column, this enables the DHCPv6 client, which supports all three methods of obtaining an IPv6 address: SLAAC, stateless DHCPv6, and stateful DHCPv6. disabled – The router will not request an IP address from a DHCP server on the LAN. enabled – The router will request an IP address from a DHCP server on the LAN.
<i>IP Address</i>	Sets a static IP address for the Ethernet interface. Use standard IPv4 or IPv6 notation (shortened notation is supported for IPv6).
<i>Subnet Mask / Prefix</i>	Specifies the subnet mask for a static IPv4 address or the prefix length for a static IPv6 address (a number from 0 to 128).
<i>Default Gateway</i>	Specifies the IP address of the default gateway. Packets with a destination not found in the routing table will be sent to this gateway.
<i>Primary DNS Server</i>	Specifies the IP address of the primary DNS server.
<i>Secondary DNS Server</i>	Specifies the IP address of the secondary DNS server.

Table 25: Network interface example – IPv4 and IPv6

The *Default Gateway* and *DNS Server* settings are only used if the *DHCP Client* is set to *disabled* and the corresponding LAN interface (ETH0, ETH1, or ETH1 or ETH2) is selected as the default route by the *Backup Routes* system (see Chapter 3.7 *Backup Routes*).

The following three items are global for the configured Ethernet interface. Only one bridge can be active on the router at a time. When a bridge is created, the *DHCP Client*, *IP Address*, and *Subnet Mask / Prefix* parameters are taken from the member interface with the lowest index (e.g., ETH0 has priority over ETH1). Other interfaces can be added to or removed from an existing bridge at any time.

Warning

Under certain conditions, an Ethernet interface can operate as a WAN interface, in which case firewall rules will apply. For details and examples, see Chapter 3.7 *Backup Routes*.

Item	Description
<i>Bridged</i>	Activates or deactivates bridging for this interface. • no – Bridging is inactive (default). • yes – Bridging is active. See the Bridge Notes below for more details.
<i>MTU</i>	Sets the Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) value. The default is 1500 bytes.
<i>Media Type</i>	Specifies the duplex mode and speed for the Ethernet port. • Auto-negotiation – The router automatically determines the optimal speed and duplex mode (default). • 100 Mbps Full Duplex – Sets a speed of 100 Mbps with full-duplex communication. • 100 Mbps Half Duplex – Sets a speed of 100 Mbps with half-duplex communication. • 10 Mbps Full Duplex – Sets a speed of 10 Mbps with full-duplex communication. • 10 Mbps Half Duplex – Sets a speed of 10 Mbps with half-duplex communication.
<i>PoE PSE</i> ¹	Available options: • enabled – The PoE PSE feature is enabled. • disabled – The PoE PSE feature is disabled.

Table 26: Network interface global items

¹Available only on models equipped with PoE PSE functionality.

Bridge Notes

A bridge functions like a network switch, forwarding packets between the interfaces connected to it. Advantech routers support bridging between Ethernet interfaces or between Ethernet and Wi-Fi Access Point (AP) interfaces. When a bridge is established, a new virtual interface named `br0` is created, which is visible on the *Status* → *Network* → *Interfaces* page.

If two Ethernet interfaces are bridged, the `br0` interface inherits the IP configuration of the interface with the lower index (e.g., `ETH0` over `ETH1`), and the configuration of the higher-indexed interface is disregarded. To include a Wi-Fi AP in a bridge, at least one Ethernet interface must also be a member; the bridge IP will be determined by the Ethernet interface.

3.1.1 DHCP Server

The DHCP server assigns IP addresses, a gateway IP (the router's IP), and a DNS server IP (the router's IP) to connected clients. It supports both static and dynamic IP address assignment. *Dynamic DHCP* assigns IPs from a configured address pool, while *Static DHCP* assigns specific IPs to clients based on their MAC addresses.

Info

- In the IPv6 column, these settings configure the DHCPv6 server. It provides stateful address configuration to clients. If the LAN prefix is set to /64, the server will also offer Stateless Address Autoconfiguration (SLAAC).
- For DHCPv6 static assignments to work, the client must use a DUID-LL or DUID-LLT type, which is derived from its MAC address.

Warning

Do not overlap the IP address ranges for static and dynamic DHCP leases. Doing so can cause IP address conflicts and network instability.

Item	Description
<i>Enable dynamic DHCP leases</i>	Enables the dynamic DHCP server.
<i>IP Pool Start</i>	The starting IP address of the range to be allocated to DHCP clients.
<i>IP Pool End</i>	The ending IP address of the range to be allocated to DHCP clients.
<i>Lease Time</i>	The duration (in seconds) for which an assigned IP address is valid before it can be reassigned.

Table 27: Dynamic DHCP server configuration

Item	Description
<i>Enable static DHCP leases</i>	Enables the static DHCP server. You can define up to 32 rules; a new row appears automatically after you fill in the previous one.
<i>MAC Address</i>	The MAC address of the DHCP client.
<i>IPv4 Address</i>	The IPv4 address to be assigned to the client.
<i>IPv6 Address</i>	The IPv6 address to be assigned to the client.

Table 28: Static DHCP server configuration

3.1.2 IPv6 Prefix Delegation



Warning

This is an advanced feature. IPv6 prefix delegation works automatically with DHCPv6. Only use this section if you require a non-standard configuration and understand the implications.

If you need to override the automatic IPv6 prefix delegation, you can configure it here. You must specify the Subnet ID Width. For example, in a typical /48 site prefix, the 16 bits following the site prefix are the Subnet ID, and the final 64 bits are the Interface ID.

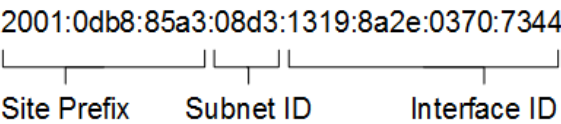


Figure 16: Example of an IPv6 address with prefix

Item	Description
Enable IPv6 prefix delegation	Enables the manual prefix delegation configuration below.
Subnet ID	The decimal value of the Subnet ID for the Ethernet interface. The maximum value depends on the Subnet ID Width.
Subnet ID Width	The bit-width of the Subnet ID field. This value is typically the remainder of 64 minus the site prefix length.

Table 29: IPv6 prefix delegation configuration

3.1.3 802.1X Authentication with RADIUS Server

IEEE 802.1X is an IEEE standard for **port-based Network Access Control** (PNAC). It provides an authentication mechanism for devices connecting to a LAN or WLAN using "EAP over LAN" (**EAPoL**), which encapsulates the **Extensible Authentication Protocol** (EAP).

IEEE 802.1X involves three parties: a **supplicant**, an **authenticator**, and an **authentication server**, as shown in Figure 17.

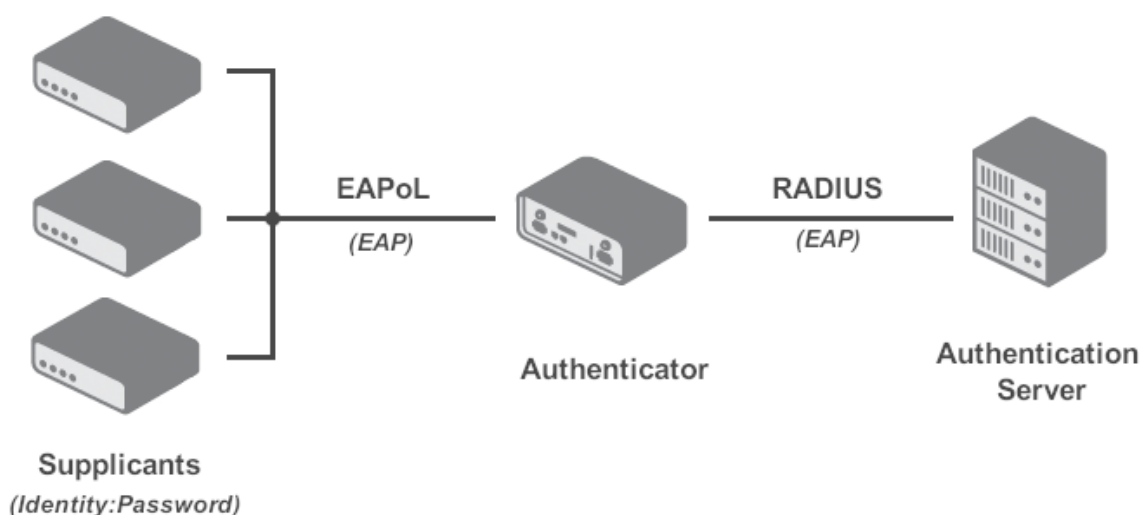


Figure 17: IEEE 802.1X functional diagram

- The **supplicant** is a client device (e.g., a laptop) requesting network access.
- The **authenticator** is a network device (e.g., a switch or router) that controls network access and mediates communication with the authentication server.
- The **authentication server** (typically a **RADIUS** server) validates the supplicant's credentials and authorizes or denies access.

Table 30 summarizes the supported 802.1X roles on Advantech routers.

Info

Advantech routers can function as a supplicant or an authenticator, but not as an authentication server.

Interface	Supplicant Role	Authenticator Role
LAN	Supported as a built-in feature (see Chapter).	Supported via the 802.1X Authenticator Router App .
Wi-Fi	Supported in Station (STA) mode (see Chapter 3.6.2 Station).	Supported in Access Point (AP) mode (see Chapter 3.6.1 Access Point).

Table 30: Supported roles for IEEE 802.1X authentication

The 802.1X supplicant can be enabled in the section below. This requires configuring an identity and, for EAP-TLS, certificates.

Item	Description
<i>Enable IEEE 802.1X Authentication</i>	Enables the 802.1X supplicant on this interface.
<i>Authentication Method</i>	Selects the authentication method (EAP-PEAP/MSCHAPv2 or EAP-TLS).
<i>CA Certificate</i>	Defines the CA certificate for the EAP-TLS protocol.
<i>Local Certificate</i>	Defines the local certificate for the EAP-TLS protocol.
<i>Local Private Key</i>	Defines the local private key for the EAP-TLS protocol.
<i>Identity</i>	The username (identity) for authentication.
<i>Password</i>	The password for authentication (used only for EAP-PEAP/MSCHAPv2).
<i>Local Private Key Password</i>	The password for the local private key (used only for EAP-TLS).

Table 31: 802.1X authentication configuration

3.1.4 LAN Configuration Examples

Example 1: Dynamic DHCP with Custom Gateway and DNS

- The dynamic IPv4 address pool is 192.168.1.2 to 192.168.1.4.
- The lease time is 600 seconds (10 minutes).
- The default gateway IP address is 192.168.1.20.
- The DNS server IP address is 192.168.1.20.

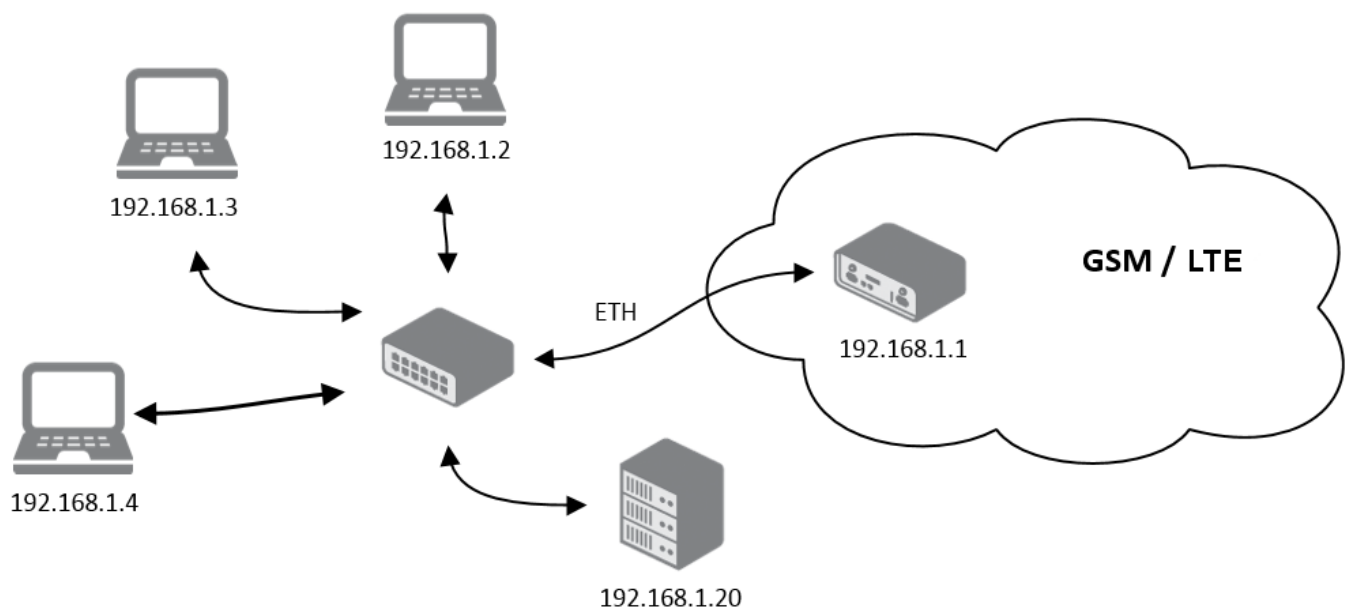


Figure 18: Network topology for example 1

ETH1 Configuration				
☒ Enable Port				
	IPv4	IPv6		
DHCP Client	disabled	disabled		
IP Address	192.168.1.1			
Subnet Mask / Prefix	255.255.255.0			
Default Gateway	192.168.1.20			
Primary DNS Server	192.168.1.20			
Secondary DNS Server				
Bridged	no			
MTU	1500	bytes	576-1500 bytes	
Media Type	auto-negotiation			
☒ Enable dynamic DHCP leases				
	IPv4	IPv6		
IP Pool Start	192.168.1.2			
IP Pool End	192.168.1.4			
Lease Time	600	600	sec	5-86400 sec
☐ Enable static DHCP leases				
	MAC Address	IP Address	IPv6 Address	
1				
2				
Maximum 32 items				
☐ Enable IPv6 prefix delegation				
Subnet ID *				
Subnet ID Width *		bits	8-32 bits	
☐ Enable IEEE 802.1X Authentication				
Authentication Method	EAP-PEAP/MSCHAPv2			
CA Certificate				
	Choose File No file chosen			
Local Certificate				
	Choose File No file chosen			
Local Private Key				
	Choose File No file chosen			
Identity				
Password				
* can be blank				
Apply				

Figure 19: LAN configuration for example 1

Example 2: Dynamic and Static DHCP Server

- The dynamic address pool is 192.168.1.2 to 192.168.1.4.
- The lease time is 600 seconds (10 minutes).
- The client with MAC 01:23:45:67:89:ab is assigned the static IP 192.168.1.10.
- The client with MAC 01:54:68:18:ba:7e is assigned the static IP 192.168.1.11.

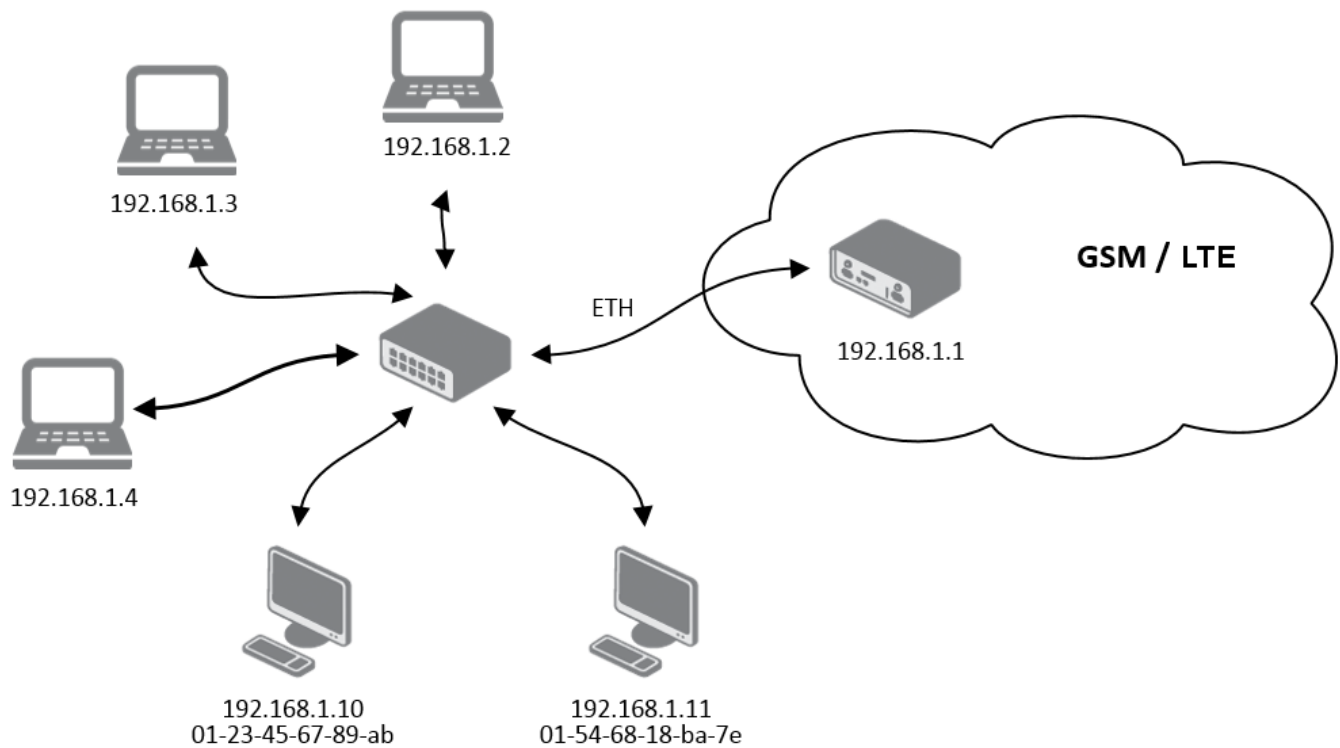


Figure 20: Network topology for example 2

ETH1 Configuration				
☒ Enable Port				
	IPv4	IPv6		
DHCP Client	disabled	disabled		
IP Address	192.168.1.1			
Subnet Mask / Prefix	255.255.255.0			
Default Gateway				
Primary DNS Server				
Secondary DNS Server				
Bridged	no			
MTU	1500	bytes	576-1500 bytes	
Media Type	auto-negotiation			
☒ Enable dynamic DHCP leases				
	IPv4	IPv6		
IP Pool Start	192.168.1.2			
IP Pool End	192.168.1.4			
Lease Time	600	600	sec	5-86400 sec
☒ Enable static DHCP leases				
	MAC Address	IP Address	IPv6 Address	
1	01:23:45:67:89:ab	192.168.1.10		
2	01:54:68:18:ba:7e	192.168.1.11		
Maximum 32 items				
☐ Enable IPv6 prefix delegation				
Subnet ID *				
Subnet ID Width *		bits	8-32 bits	
☐ Enable IEEE 802.1X Authentication				
Authentication Method	EAP-PEAP/MSCHAPv2			
CA Certificate				
	Choose File No file chosen			
Local Certificate				
	Choose File No file chosen			
Local Private Key				
	Choose File No file chosen			
Identity				
Password				
* can be blank				
Apply				

Figure 21: LAN configuration for example 2

Example 3: IPv6 Dynamic DHCP Server

- The dynamic IPv6 address pool is 2001:db8::1 to 2001:db8::ffff.
- The lease time is 600 seconds (10 minutes).
- The router remains accessible via its default IPv4 address (192.168.1.1).

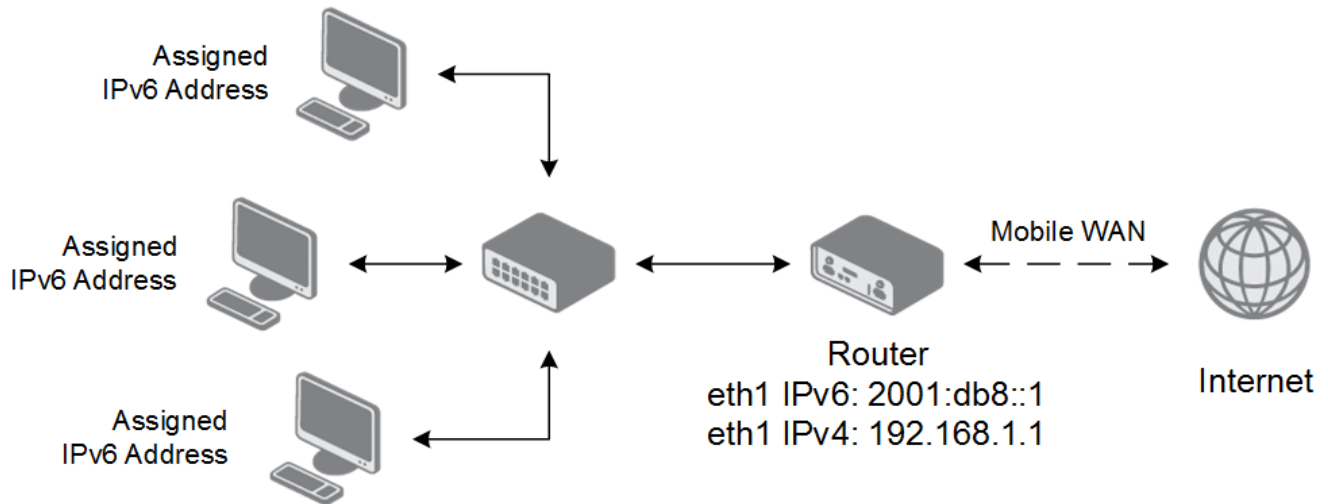


Figure 22: Network topology for example 3

ETH1 Configuration			
☒ Enable Port			
	IPv4	IPv6	
DHCP Client	disabled	disabled	
IP Address	192.168.1.1	2001:db8::1	
Subnet Mask / Prefix	255.255.255.0	64	
Default Gateway			
Primary DNS Server			
Secondary DNS Server			
Bridged	no		
MTU	1500	bytes	576-1500 bytes
Media Type	auto-negotiation		
☒ Enable dynamic DHCP leases			
	IPv4	IPv6	
IP Pool Start		2001:db8::2	
IP Pool End		2001:db8::ffff	
Lease Time		600	sec 5-86400 sec
☐ Enable static DHCP leases			
	MAC Address	IP Address	IPv6 Address
1			
2			
Maximum 32 items			
☐ Enable IPv6 prefix delegation			
Subnet ID *			
Subnet ID Width *		bits	8-32 bits
☐ Enable IEEE 802.1X Authentication			
Authentication Method	EAP-PEAP/MSCHAPv2		
CA Certificate			
	Choose File No file chosen		
Local Certificate			
	Choose File No file chosen		
Local Private Key			
	Choose File No file chosen		
Identity			
Password			
* can be blank			
Apply			

Figure 23: LAN configuration for example 3

3.2 VLAN

The router allows for the creation of up to three separate Virtual LAN (VLAN) interfaces, enabling network segmentation for enhanced security and traffic management. Each VLAN can be configured with its own IP address, DHCP server, and other network settings, effectively creating an independent logical network on a shared physical interface.

The VLAN configuration page, accessible via *Configuration* → *VLAN*, is divided into sections for interface setup, DHCP services, and IPv6 prefix delegation.

1st VLAN Configuration

☐ Create 1st VLAN connection

DHCP Client

IPv4

disabled ▼

IPv6

disabled ▼

IP Address

Subnet Mask / Prefix

Interface

ETH0 ▼

VLAN ID

1-4095

MTU *

bytes

576-1500 bytes

☐ Enable dynamic DHCP leases

IP Pool Start

IP Pool End

Lease Time

600

600

sec

5-86400 sec

☐ Enable static DHCP leases

MAC Address

IP Address

IPv6 Address

1

2

Maximum 32 items

☐ Enable IPv6 prefix delegation

Subnet ID *

Subnet ID Width *

bits

8-32 bits

* can be blank

Figure 24: VLAN configuration page

Item	Description
Create VLAN connection	Enables the creation and configuration of this VLAN interface.
DHCP Client (IPv4/IPv6)	Enables or disables the DHCP client for the VLAN interface. When enabled, the interface will request an IP address from a DHCP server on the network.
IP Address	Assigns a static IPv4 or IPv6 address to the VLAN interface.
Subnet Mask / Prefix	Defines the subnet mask (for IPv4) or prefix length (for IPv6) for the static IP address.
Interface	Selects the parent physical Ethernet interface (<i>ETH0</i> or <i>ETH1</i>) to which this VLAN will be bound.

Table 32: VLAN configuration options

Item	Description
<i>VLAN ID</i>	Specifies the unique identifier (1-4095) for the VLAN. This ID is used to tag traffic belonging to this virtual network.
<i>MTU</i>	Sets the Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) in bytes for this VLAN interface. If left blank, the default value of the parent interface is used.
<i>Enable dynamic DHCP leases</i>	Enables the built-in DHCP server for this VLAN, which can dynamically assign IPv4 and IPv6 addresses to clients. • IP Pool Start: The first IP address in the DHCP assignment pool. • IP Pool End: The last IP address in the DHCP assignment pool. • Lease Time: The duration in seconds for which an IP address is leased to a client (default is 600).
<i>Enable static DHCP leases</i>	Enables static IP address assignments based on a client's MAC address. Up to 32 static leases can be defined for each address family (IPv4 and IPv6). • MAC Address: The hardware address of the client device. • IP Address: The fixed IPv4 address to be assigned to the client. • IPv6 Address: The fixed IPv6 address to be assigned to the client.
<i>Enable IPv6 prefix delegation</i>	Configures the router to request a block of IPv6 addresses from an upstream router, which can then be used to assign addresses to clients on this VLAN. • Subnet ID: The identifier for the requested subnet. • Subnet ID Width: The size of the subnet ID in bits.

Table 32: VLAN configuration page (continued)

3.3 VRRP

The Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol (VRRP) is a standard network protocol that provides automatic default gateway redundancy. It creates a virtual router, represented by a shared floating IP address, which is managed by a primary (Master) router and one or more Backup routers. If the Master router fails, a Backup router automatically takes over its role, ensuring that devices on the LAN maintain network connectivity without manual intervention. This is particularly useful for adding cellular redundancy to a primary wired connection or for creating a high-availability setup between two cellular links.

The router supports up to two VRRP instances, which can be configured on the *Configuration* → *VRRP* page.

1st VRRP Instance Configuration

☐ Enable 1st VRRP Instance

Protocol Version

VRRPv2

▼

Interface

ETH0

▼

Virtual Server IP Address

Virtual Server ID

1-255

Host Priority

1-254

☐ Check connection

Ping IP Address

Ping Interval

sec

1-4294 sec

Ping Timeout

sec

1-60 sec

Ping Probes

1-10

☐ Enable traffic monitoring

Apply

Figure 25: VRRP configuration page

VRRP Instance Configuration

To enable and configure a VRRP instance, check the *Enable VRRP* box and configure the following parameters:

Item	Description
<i>Protocol Version</i>	Specifies the VRRP version to be used. • VRRPv2: The original standard, widely supported, for IPv4 networks. • VRRPv3: The newer standard that adds support for IPv6 networks.
<i>Interface</i>	Selects the network interface (e.g., <i>ETH0</i>) on which VRRP advertisements will be sent and received.
<i>Virtual Server IP Address</i>	Sets the shared virtual IP address. This address must be identical for all routers in the VRRP group and serves as the default gateway for all LAN devices.
<i>Virtual Server ID</i>	Defines the identifier for the virtual router group. The range is 1–255. This ID must be identical for all routers participating in the same VRRP group.
<i>Host Priority</i>	Sets the priority value used to elect the Master router. The range is 1–254 (default is 100). • The router with the highest priority value becomes the Master. • If the Virtual Server IP matches the interface's real IP, the priority is automatically set to 255 (IP Address Owner), overriding this setting.

Table 33: VRRP instance configuration options

Connection Checking

The *Check connection* feature adds a crucial layer of reliability by actively testing the health of the router's WAN connection. While VRRP itself detects router failures, this feature can detect upstream network outages even if the router is still running.

When enabled, the Master router periodically sends ICMP echo requests (pings) to a specified target IP address. If no replies are received after a configurable number of attempts, the router assumes the connection has failed and lowers its VRRP priority, triggering a failover to a Backup router.

Info

For reliable connection monitoring, ping a stable public IP address (e.g., a public DNS server like 8.8.8.8). In a private network, you can ping a remote gateway that is directly accessible or available via a VPN.

The *Enable traffic monitoring* option optimizes this process by suspending ping tests as long as any other traffic is received on the interface. This confirms the connection is active and reduces unnecessary data usage.

Item	Description
<i>Ping IP Address</i>	The destination IP address for the ICMP echo requests. Domain names are not supported.
<i>Ping Interval</i>	The time in seconds between each ping request.
<i>Ping Timeout</i>	The time in seconds to wait for a response to each ping.
<i>Ping Probes</i>	The number of consecutive failed pings before the connection is declared down.

Table 34: Connection checking parameters

Configuration Example

This example illustrates a high-availability topology using two routers, each with an independent cellular connection. For maximum redundancy, APN 1 and APN 2 are provided by different mobile operators.

- **LAN Side:** Both routers share the Virtual IP address **192.168.1.1** (Virtual Server ID 5). LAN clients use this IP as their default gateway, unaware of the physical routers.
- **Priorities:** The Main router (Real IP **192.168.1.2**) is configured with a higher priority of **200**, making it the Master. The Backup router (Real IP **192.168.1.3**) has a lower priority of **100**.
- **WAN Side:** To ensure end-to-end connectivity, both routers monitor a reliable public target (**8.8.8.8**) via their respective cellular WAN interfaces.

If the Main router fails to receive a ping response from 8.8.8.8, it automatically lowers its priority. The Backup router then becomes the new Master and takes over the Virtual IP, ensuring uninterrupted Internet access for all LAN clients.

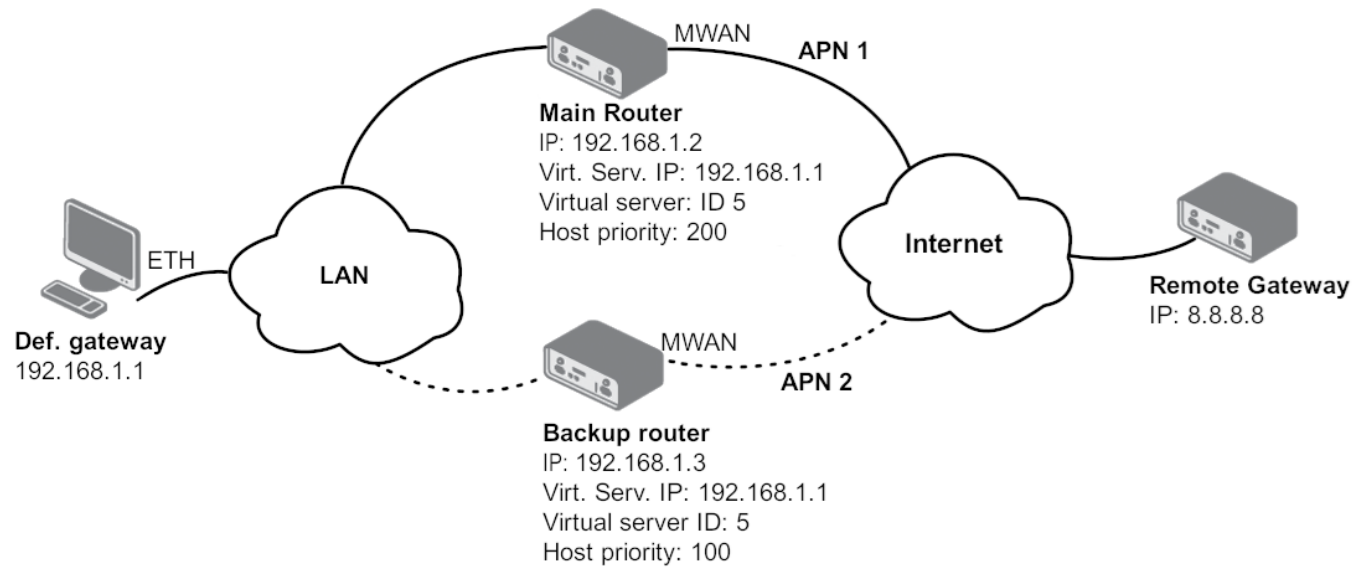


Figure 26: An example of VRRP topology

1st VRRP Instance Configuration			
☒ Enable 1st VRRP Instance			
Protocol Version	VRRPv2		
Interface	ETH0		
Virtual Server IP Address	192.168.1.1		
Virtual Server ID	5		1-255
Host Priority	200		1-254
☒ Check connection			
Ping IP Address	8.8.8.8		
Ping Interval	10	sec	1-4294 sec
Ping Timeout	5	sec	1-60 sec
Ping Probes	10		1-10
☐ Enable traffic monitoring			

Figure 27: Main router configuration

Configure the backup router identically to the main router (see Figure 27), with one exception: set the **Host Priority** to **100**. The *Check connection* settings should remain the same.

3.4 Mobile WAN

Select the *Mobile WAN* item in the *Configuration* menu section to enter the cellular network configuration page. See *Mobile WAN Configuration* page in Figure 29.

1st Mobile WAN Configuration					
☐ Create connection to mobile network					
	1st SIM card		2nd SIM card		
Carrier	Outside North America ▼		Outside North America ▼		
APN *					
Username *					
Password *					
Authentication	PAP or CHAP ▼		PAP or CHAP ▼		
IP Mode	IPv4 ▼		IPv4 ▼		
IP Address *					
Dial Number *					
Operator *					comma-separated list
Network Type	automatic selection ▼		automatic selection ▼		
PIN *					
MRU	1500	1500	bytes	1280-16384 bytes	
MTU	1500	1500	bytes	1280-16384 bytes	
DNS Settings	get from operator ▼		get from operator ▼		
Primary DNS Server					
Primary IPv6 DNS Server					
Secondary DNS Server					
Secondary IPv6 DNS Server					
(The feature of check connection to mobile network is necessary for uninterrupted operation)					
Check Connection	disabled ▼		disabled ▼		
Ping IP Address					upto two comma-separated values
Ping IPv6 Address					upto two comma-separated values
Ping Interval			sec	1-86400 sec	
Ping Timeout	10	10	sec	1-86400 sec	

Figure 28: Mobile WAN configuration page – part 1

☐ Enable traffic monitoring			
Data Limit			MiB 1-2097152 MiB
Warning Threshold			% 50-99%
Accounting Start	1	1	1-28
SIM Card	enabled	enabled	
Registration Timeout *			sec
Roaming State	not applicable	not applicable	
Data Limit State	not applicable	not applicable	
Digital Input 0 State	not applicable	not applicable	
Digital Input 1 State	not applicable	not applicable	
Default SIM Card	1st		
Initial State	online		
☐ Switch to other SIM card when connection fails ☐ Switch to default SIM card after timeout			
Initial Timeout	60	min	1-10000 min
Subsequent Timeout *		min	0-10000 min
Additive Constant *		min	0-1000 min
☐ Enable PPPoE bridge mode ☐ Enable debugging			
* can be blank			
Apply			

Figure 29: Mobile WAN configuration page – part 2

Connection to Mobile Network

Info

- Starting with firmware version 6.6.0, PLMN whitelisting is now an integrated firmware feature, available in the *Operator* field. This native functionality replaces the legacy *PLMN Whitelist* Router App.
- To avoid potential conflicts, you must disable or uninstall the legacy Router App before using the integrated PLMN whitelisting feature.

If the *Create connection to mobile network* checkbox is checked, the router will automatically attempt to establish a connection after booting up. You can specify the following parameters for each SIM card separately.

Item	Description
Carrier	This option allows for the manual or automatic selection of a mobile network carrier. It is primarily available and fully configurable for global or NAM (North American) certified router models. - For router models not certified for NAM, or for global models, an <i>Outside North America</i> option is available, which sets a profile that restricts connections to non-NAM operators. - For router models certified for NAM, several choices are typically offered: <i>North America, Autoselect</i>: Allows the router to automatically detect and connect to a suitable NAM operator. <i>North America, Generic</i>: Enables a generic North American PTCRB (PCS Type Certification Review Board) compliant configuration, if supported by the router model. - Manual selection of specific NAM operators: A list of certified operators is provided, which may include <i>AT&T</i>, <i>Rogers</i>, <i>T-Mobile</i>, or <i>Verizon</i>.
APN	Network identifier (Access Point Name).
Username	The user name used for logging on to the GSM network.
Password	The password used for logging on to the GSM network. Enter valid characters only, see chap. 1.2.1.
Authentication	Authentication protocol used in the GSM network: PAP or CHAP – The router selects the authentication method. PAP – The router uses the PAP authentication method. CHAP – The router uses the CHAP authentication method.
IP Mode	Specifies the version of IP protocol used: IPv4 – IPv4 protocol is used only (default). IPv6 – IPv6 protocol is used only. IPv4/IPv6 – IPv4 and IPv6 independent dual stack is enabled.
IP Address	For use in IPv4 and IPv4/IPv6 mode only. Specifies the IPv4 address of the SIM card. You manually enter the IP address only when mobile network carrier has assigned the IP address.
Dial Number	Specifies the telephone number which the router dials for a GPRS or CSD connection. The router uses the default telephone number *99***1 #.
Operator	Specifies the carrier code. You can specify this parameter as the PLNM preferred carrier code.
Network type	Specifies the type of protocol used in the mobile network. Automatic selection – The router automatically selects a transmission method according to the availability of transmission technologies. - It is also possible to select one of the following specific methods of data transmission: LTE, UMTS/HSPA, GPRS/EDGE.

Table 35: Mobile WAN configuration items description

Item	Description
<i>PIN</i>	Specifies the PIN used to unlock the SIM card. Use only if this is required by a given SIM card. The SIM card will be blocked after several failed attempts to enter the PIN.
<i>MRU</i>	Maximum Receive Unit – maximum size of packet that the router can receive via Mobile WAN. The default value is 1500 B. Other settings may cause the router to receive data incorrectly. Minimal value in IPv4 and IPv4/IPv6 mode: 128 B. Minimal value in IPv6 mode: 1280 B.
<i>MTU</i>	Maximum Transmission Unit – maximum size of packet that the router can transmit via Mobile WAN. The default value is 1500 B. Other settings may cause the router to transmit data incorrectly. Minimal value in IPv4 and IPv4/IPv6 mode: 128 B. Minimal value in IPv6 mode: 1280 B.

Table 35: Mobile WAN configuration items description (continued)

Info

The following is a list of tips for working with the *1st/2nd Mobile WAN Configuration* form:

- If the MTU size is set incorrectly, then the router will not exceed the data transfer. If the MTU value is set too low, more frequent fragmentation of data will occur. More frequent fragmentation will mean a higher overhead and also the possibility of packet damage during defragmentation. In contrast, a higher MTU value can cause the network to drop the packet.
- If the *IP address* field is left blank, when the router establishes a connection, the mobile network carrier will automatically assign an IP address. If you assign an IP address manually, then the router will access the network quicker.
- If the **APN** field is left blank, the router automatically selects the APN using the IMSI code of the SIM card. The name of the chosen APN can be found in the System Log.
- If you enter the word *blank* in the *APN* field, then the router interprets the APN as blank.

Warning

The correct PIN must be filled in. An incorrect PIN may block the SIM card.

Parameters identified with an asterisk require you to enter the appropriate information only if this information is required by the mobile network carrier.

When the router is unsuccessful in establishing a connection to mobile network, you should verify accuracy of the entered data. Alternatively, you could try a different authentication method or network type.

DNS Configuration

The *DNS Settings* parameter is designed for easier configuration on the client's side. When this value is set to *get from operator* the router will attempt to automatically obtain an IP address from the primary and secondary DNS server of the mobile network carrier. To specify the IP addresses of the Primary DNS servers manually, on the *DNS Server* pull down list select the value *set manually*. You can also fill-in the IPv4 or IPv6 address of the DNS server (or both) based on the IP Mode option.

Mobile Network Connection Check



Enabling the *Check Connection* function for mobile networks is necessary for uninterrupted and continuous operation of the router.

If the *Check Connection* item is set to *enabled* or *enabled + bind*, the router will be sending the ping requests to the specified domain or IP address configured in *Ping IP Address* or *Ping IPv6 Address* at regular time intervals set up in the *Ping Interval*.

In case of an unsuccessful ping, a new ping will be sent after the *Ping Timeout*. If the ping is unsuccessful three times in a row, the router will terminate the cellular connection and will attempt to establish a new one.

This monitoring function can be set for both SIM cards separately, but running on the active SIM at given time only. Be sure, you configure a functional address as the destination for the ping, for example an IP address of the operator's DNS server.

If the *Check Connection* item is set to the *enabled*, the ping requests are being sent on the basis of the routing table. Therefore, the requests may be sent through any available interface. If you require each ping request to be sent through the network interface, which was created when establishing a connection to the mobile operator, it is necessary to set the *Check Connection* to *enabled + bind*. The *disabled* option deactivates checking of the connection to the mobile network.



A note for routers connected to the **Verizon** carrier (detected by the router):

The retry interval for connecting to the mobile network prolongs with more retries. First two retries are done after 1 minute. Then the interval prolongs to 2, 8 and 15 minutes. The ninth and every other retry is done in 90 minutes interval.

If *Enable Traffic Monitoring* item is checked, the router will monitor the Mobile WAN traffic without sending the ping requests. If there is no traffic, the router will start sending the ping requests.

Item	Description
<i>Ping IP Address</i>	The destination IPv4 address or domain name for ping queries. You can specify up to two comma-separated values. If two addresses are provided, the connection is considered failed only when neither address responds. Available in <i>IPv4</i> and <i>IPv4/IPv6 IP Mode</i> .
<i>Ping IPv6 Address</i>	The destination IPv6 address or domain name for ping queries. You can specify up to two comma-separated values. If two addresses are provided, the connection is considered failed only when neither address responds. Available in <i>IPv6</i> and <i>IPv4/IPv6 IP Mode</i> .
<i>Ping Interval</i>	The time interval between outgoing pings.
<i>Ping Timeout</i>	The time (in seconds) to wait for a ping response.

Table 36: Check connection to mobile network configuration

Connection Check Example

The figure below displays the following scenario: the connection to the mobile network in IPv4 *IP Mode* is controlled on the address 8.8.8.8 with a time interval of 60 seconds for the first SIM card and on the address www.google.com with the time interval 80 seconds for the second SIM card (for an active SIM only). Because the *Enable traffic monitoring* option is enabled, the control pings are not sent, but the data stream is monitored. The ping will be sent, if the data stream is interrupted.

(The feature of check connection to mobile network is necessary for uninterrupted operation)

Check Connection	enabled	enabled	
Ping IP Address	8.8.8.8	www.google.com	upto two comma-separated values
Ping IPv6 Address			upto two comma-separated values
Ping Interval	60	80	sec 1-86400 sec
Ping Timeout	60	80	sec 1-86400 sec

☒ Enable traffic monitoring

Figure 30: Connection check example

Data Limit Settings

Info

The *Data Limit* parameters serve two independent functions:

- **SMS Warning:** Triggered based on the *Warning Threshold*. This requires the *Send SMS when data limit is exceeded* option to be enabled in the *Services → SMS* configuration page.
- **SIM Switching:** To force the router to switch to another SIM once the *Data Limit* is reached, the *Data Limit State* parameter in the lower part of the form must be set to *not exceeded*. If left as *not applicable*, the limit is ignored for switching purposes.

Item	Description
<i>Data Limit</i>	The maximum amount of data (sent and received) allowed per billing period (one month). The maximum configurable value is 2 TB (2,097,152 MB). See the info box above for important details on how this limit is applied.
<i>Warning Threshold</i>	A percentage of the <i>Data Limit</i> (ranging from 50% to 99%). When this threshold is exceeded, the router sends an SMS message. See the info box above for prerequisites.
<i>Accounting Start</i>	The day of the month when the billing cycle begins. The router starts counting data from this day.

Table 37: Data limit configuration

SIM Card Switching

In the lower part of the configuration form you can specify the rules for toggling between the two SIM cards.

The router will automatically toggle between the SIM cards and their individual setups depending on the configuration settings specified here (manual permission, roaming, data limit, binary inputs state). Note that the SIM card selected for connection establishment is the result of the logical product (AND) of the configuration here (table below).



Item	Description
<i>SIM Card</i>	Enable or disable the use of a SIM card. If you set all the SIM cards to <i>disabled</i>, this means that the entire cellular module is disabled. • enabled – It is possible to use the SIM card. • disabled – Never use the SIM card, the usage of this SIM is forbidden.
<i>Registration Timeout</i>	Sets the registration timeout for the SIM card in seconds. The default value is 2 minutes. If not set, the default timeout will be used.
<i>Roaming State</i>	Configure the use of SIM cards based on roaming. This roaming feature has to be activated for the SIM card on which it is enabled! • not applicable – It is possible to use the SIM card everywhere. • home network only – Only use the SIM card if roaming is not detected.
<i>Data Limit State</i>	Configure the use of SIM cards based on the Data Limit set above: • not applicable – It is possible to use the SIM regardless of the limit. • not exceeded – Use the SIM card only if the Data Limit (set above) has not been exceeded.
<i>BIN0 State</i>	Configure the use of SIM cards based on binary input 0 state: • not applicable – It is possible to use the SIM regardless of BIN0 state. • on – Only use the SIM card if the BIN0 state is logical 0 – voltage present. • off – Only use the SIM card if the BIN0 state is logical 1 – no voltage.
<i>BIN1 State</i>	Configure the use of SIM cards based on binary input 1 state: • not applicable – It is possible to use the SIM regardless of BIN1 state. • on – Only use the SIM card if the BIN1 state is logical 0 – voltage present. • off – Only use the SIM card if the BIN1 state is logical 1 – no voltage.

Table 38: SIM card switching configuration

Use the following parameters to specify the decision making of SIM card switching in the cellular module.

Item	Description
<i>Default SIM Card</i>	Specifies the modules' default SIM card. The router will attempt to establish a connection to mobile network using this default. • 1st – The 1st SIM card is the default one. • 2nd – The 2nd SIM card is the default one.
<i>Initial State</i>	Specifies the action of the cellular module after the SIM card has been selected. • online – establish connection to the mobile network after the SIM card has been selected (default). • offline – go to the off-line mode after the SIM card has been selected. Note: If offline, you can change this initial state by SMS message only – see <i>SMS Configuration</i>. The cellular module will also go into off-line mode if none of the SIM cards are not selected.
<i>Switch to other SIM card when connection fails</i>	Applicable only when connection is established on the default SIM card and then fails. If the connection failure is detected by <i>Check Connection</i> feature above, the router will switch to the backup SIM card.
<i>Switch to default SIM card after timeout</i>	If enabled, after timeout, the router will attempt to switch back to the default SIM card. This applies only when there is default SIM card defined and the backup SIM is selected because of a failure of the default one or if roaming settings cause the switch. This feature is available only when <i>Switch to other SIM card when connection fails</i> is enabled.
<i>Initial Timeout</i>	Specifies the length of time that the router waits before the first attempt to revert to the default SIM card, the range of this parameter is from 1 to 10000 minutes.
<i>Subsequent Timeout</i>	Specifies the length of time that the router waits after an unsuccessful attempt to revert to the default SIM card, the range is from 1 to 10000 min.
<i>Additive Constant</i>	Specifies the length of time that the router waits for any further attempts to revert to the default SIM card. This length time is the sum of the time specified in the "Subsequent Timeout" parameter and the time specified in this parameter. The range in this parameter is from 1 to 10000 minutes.

Table 39: Parameters for SIM card switching



Specific behavior of **SmartFlex SR305** routers connected to **Verizon** carrier described in Chapter applies on SIM cards switching, too. (It is single cellular module.)

Other Settings

This chapter describes the remaining configuration items within the Mobile WAN settings.

Item	Description
<i>Enable PPPoE bridge mode</i>	Enables the PPPoE (Point-to-Point Protocol over Ethernet) bridge mode on the <i>Mobile WAN</i> interface. When enabled, the router acts as a transparent bridge for PPPoE traffic, forwarding PPPoE frames between the cellular WAN interface and a designated device on the LAN. This allows a device (e.g., a PC or another router) connected to the router's LAN to establish a direct PPPoE connection with the mobile network operator, thereby obtaining the IP address assigned by the operator directly onto that end device. This function is distinct from standard Layer 2 Ethernet or Wi-Fi bridging and specifically applies to PPPoE traffic over the Mobile WAN interface.
<i>Enable debugging</i>	Enables detailed diagnostic logging features for troubleshooting purposes. When active, extensive debugging information is recorded. For these debug-level messages to be captured and visible in the system log, you must also set the <i>Minimum Severity</i> to <i>Debug</i> in the <i>Configuration</i> → <i>Services</i> → <i>Syslog</i> section of the web interface. Note: Debug logging can generate a large volume of data. It is strongly recommended to disable this option once troubleshooting is complete.

Table 40: Other settings

SIM Card Switching Configuration Examples

Example 1: Timeout Configuration

Mark the *Switch to default SIM card after timeout* check box, and fill-in the following values:

☒ Switch to other SIM card when connection fails			
☒ Switch to default SIM card after timeout			
Initial Timeout	60	min	1-10000 min
Subsequent Timeout *	30	min	0-10000 min
Additive Constant *	20	min	0-1000 min

Figure 31: Configuration for SIM card switching Example 1

The first attempt to change to the default SIM card is carried out after 60 minutes. When the first attempt fails, a second attempt is made after 30 minutes. A third attempt is made after 50 minutes (30+20). A fourth attempt is made after 70 minutes (30+20+20).

Example 2: Data Limit Switching

This example demonstrates how to configure the router to automatically switch to the second SIM card once the data limit of 800 MB is exceeded on the first (default) SIM.

Crucially, the *Data Limit State* for the 1st SIM card must be set to *not exceeded*. An SMS warning is also sent upon reaching 400 MB (50% threshold), which requires enabling the corresponding feature on the *SMS Configuration* page. The billing period starts on the 18th day of the month.

Data Limit	800		MiB	1-2097152 MiB
Warning Threshold	50		%	50-99%
Accounting Start	18	1		1-28
SIM Card	enabled	enabled		
Registration Timeout *			sec	
Roaming State	not applicable	not applicable		
Data Limit State	not exceeded	not applicable		
Digital Input 0 State	not applicable	not applicable		
Default SIM Card	1st			
Initial State	online			
☐ Switch to other SIM card when connection fails				
☐ Switch to default SIM card after timeout				
Initial Timeout		min		1-10000 min
Subsequent Timeout *		min		0-10000 min
Additive Constant *		min		0-1000 min

Figure 32: Configuration for SIM card switching Example 2

3.5 PPPoE

Point-to-Point Protocol over Ethernet (PPPoE) is a network protocol used to encapsulate PPP frames within Ethernet frames. It is commonly used to establish a connection with a broadband modem (e.g., ADSL) or other network device that acts as a PPPoE server. The router's PPPoE client allows it to authenticate and establish a session, after which it receives a public IP address and can forward traffic to the Internet.

The PPPoE settings are available on the *Configuration* → *PPPoE* page.

PPPoE Configuration

☐ Create PPPoE connection

Interface ETH0

Username *

Password * 👁

Authentication PAP or CHAP

IP Mode IPv4

MRU 1492 bytes 128-16384 bytes

MTU 1492 bytes 128-16384 bytes

Clamp Max. Segment Size ☒

DNS Settings get from server

Primary DNS Server

Primary IPv6 DNS Server

Secondary DNS Server

Secondary IPv6 DNS Server

* can be blank

Apply

Figure 33: PPPoE configuration page

Item	Description
Create PPPoE connection	Enables the PPPoE client on the selected interface. When checked, the router will automatically attempt to establish a connection on boot.
Interface	Selects the interface on which the PPPoE client will operate: the Ethernet interface (<i>ETH0</i> or <i>ETH1</i>) or a configured VLAN interface (<i>1st VLAN/2nd VLAN/3rd VLAN</i>).
Username	The username required for authentication with the PPPoE server.
Password	The password for the specified username.
Authentication	Specifies the authentication protocol to be used. • PAP or CHAP: Allows the router to negotiate and use either protocol (default). • PAP: Forces the use of Password Authentication Protocol. • CHAP: Forces the use of Challenge-Handshake Authentication Protocol.
IP Mode	Defines the IP protocol version for the connection. • IPv4: Establishes an IPv4-only session (default). • IPv6: Establishes an IPv6-only session. • IPv4/IPv6: Enables a dual-stack session for both IPv4 and IPv6.

Table 41: PPPoE configuration options

Item	Description
<i>MRU</i>	Defines the Maximum Receive Unit in bytes, which is the largest packet size the router can receive. The default is 1492 bytes.
<i>MTU</i>	Defines the Maximum Transmission Unit in bytes, which is the largest packet size the router can transmit. The default is 1492 bytes.
<i>Clamp Max. Segment Size</i>	When enabled (default), this option automatically adjusts the TCP Maximum Segment Size (MSS) to prevent fragmentation, which can improve performance and reliability.
<i>DNS Settings</i>	Configures how DNS servers are obtained. • Get from server: Automatically uses the DNS servers provided by the PPPoE server (default). • Manual: Allows you to specify primary and secondary DNS servers manually.

Table 41: PPPoE configuration options (continued)

Warning

Setting an incorrect MTU or MRU value can lead to packet fragmentation or loss, resulting in a failed or unreliable connection. It is recommended to use the default value of 1492 bytes unless your provider requires a different setting.

3.6 Wi-Fi

3.6.1 Access Point

Warning

Important Note on Upgrading to Firmware 6.6.0

When upgrading from a firmware version prior to 6.6.0, any separate *Country* settings for the Wi-Fi Access Point (AP) and Station (STA) modes will be consolidated into a single, unified *Country* setting. This change ensures regulatory compliance and simplifies configuration. For more details, please refer to Chapter 3.6.3 *Country*.

Info

- The router supports configuring two separate WLANs (**multiple SSIDs**) for access point 1 (AP1) and access point 2 (AP2). However, both access points must share the same radio settings (channel, mode, channel width, etc.).
- The router supports operating either with access point 1 (AP1) and access point 2 (AP2) enabled simultaneously, or with one access point (APx) and one station (STA) enabled at the same time.
- **RADIUS** (Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service) is supported as a networking protocol for centralized authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA). The router acts only as a RADIUS client, communicating with an external RADIUS server.

To enable Wi-Fi access point mode, check the *Enable Wi-Fi AP* box at the top of the *Configuration* → *Wi-Fi* → *Access Point 1* or *Access Point 2* configuration page. In this mode, the router operates as an access point, allowing other devices in *station (STA)* mode to connect.

The tables below list the available configuration options.

Item	Description
<i>Enable Wi-Fi AP</i>	Enables the Wi-Fi access point (AP). Both Access Point 1 (AP1) and Access Point 2 (AP2) can be enabled and operated simultaneously.
<i>Country</i>	A single Wi-Fi Country code applies to all AP and STA interfaces and is configured on a separate page (accessible via the <i>Change</i> button). After changing the country, you must review the <i>HW Mode</i> , <i>Bandwidth</i> , and <i>Channel</i> settings.
<i>IP Address</i>	A fixed IP address for the Wi-Fi interface. Use standard IPv4 or IPv6 notation.
<i>Subnet Mask / Prefix</i>	Specifies the Subnet Mask for an IPv4 address or the prefix length (0 to 128) for an IPv6 address.
<i>Bridged</i>	Activates bridge mode: • no – Bridged mode is disabled (default). The WLAN is a separate network from the LAN. • yes – Bridged mode is enabled. The WLAN is connected to one or more LAN networks. In this mode, most network settings in this table are ignored, and the router uses the settings of the bridged LAN interface. See the Bridge Notes in Chapter 3.1 <i>Ethernet</i> for further details.
<i>Enable dynamic DHCP leases</i>	Enables the dynamic allocation of IP addresses using the DHCP (or DHCPv6) server.
<i>IP Pool Start</i>	The start of the IP address range assigned to DHCP clients.
<i>IP Pool End</i>	The end of the IP address range assigned to DHCP clients.
<i>Lease Time</i>	The duration (in seconds) for which a client can use its assigned IP address.

Table 42: Wi-Fi configuration items description

Item	Description
<i>Enable IPv6 prefix delegation</i>	Enables prefix delegation for IPv6 clients.
<i>Subnet ID</i>	The decimal value of the Subnet ID for the interface. The maximum value is determined by the <i>Subnet ID Width</i> .
<i>Subnet ID Width</i>	The maximum Subnet ID width, which depends on your site's configuration. The remaining bits (up to 64) are used for the prefix.
<i>SSID</i>	The unique identifier (name) of the Wi-Fi network. Access Point 1 (AP1) and Access Point 2 (AP2) can have different SSIDs.
<i>Broadcast SSID</i>	Defines how the SSID is broadcast in the beacon frame: • enabled – The SSID is included in the beacon frame (standard behavior). • zero length – The SSID is omitted from the beacon frame. Requests to send beacon frames are ignored. • clear – SSID characters in the beacon are replaced with zeros, but the original length is maintained. Requests for beacon frames are ignored.
<i>SSID Isolation</i>	When enabled with a selected zone, clients on this access point cannot communicate with clients on other access points that have a different zone selected.
<i>Client Isolation</i>	If enabled, clients connected to this access point are prevented from communicating with each other. If disabled, the AP functions like a switch, allowing clients on the same LAN to communicate.
<i>WMM</i>	Enables basic QoS (Quality of Service) for the Wi-Fi network. This feature is suitable for simple applications that require QoS but does not guarantee network throughput.
<i>Follow STA radio settings</i>	When enabled, if the STA (Station) mode is connected to an external Access Point, the router's own AP radio settings will automatically adjust to match those of the external AP.
<i>HW Mode¹</i>	Specifies the Wi-Fi standard supported by the access point. Options include: • IEEE 802.11b (2.4 GHz) • IEEE 802.11b+g (2.4 GHz) • IEEE 802.11b+g+n (2.4 GHz) • IEEE 802.11a (5 GHz) • IEEE 802.11a+n (5 GHz) • IEEE 802.11ac (5 GHz) This setting is shared by both Access Point 1 and Access Point 2.
<i>Bandwidth¹</i>	Allows you to select the transfer bandwidth. This option may be unavailable for some hardware modes. If the selected bandwidth is occupied, the router may automatically switch to a lower bandwidth. This setting is shared by both Access Point 1 and Access Point 2.
<i>Channel¹</i>	The channel on which the Wi-Fi access point operates. Available channels depend on the selected <i>Country</i> . Select <i>Auto</i> to allow the router to choose the optimal channel automatically. If you change the country, review this setting , as the previously selected channel may no longer be valid. This setting is shared by both Access Point 1 and Access Point 2. <u>Note:</u> When <i>40 MHz</i> bandwidth is selected, the interpretation of the channel number depends on the Wi-Fi band: • In the 2.4 GHz band, the channel number refers to the primary (20 MHz) channel. • In the 5 GHz and 6 GHz bands, the channel number refers to the center frequency of the 40 MHz channel. <u>Note:</u> On NAM routers, only channels 1 to 11 are supported in the 2.4 GHz band.

Table 42: Wi-Fi configuration items description (continued)

Item	Description
<i>Short GI</i>	This option, available for 802.11n mode, enables a short guard interval (400 ns instead of 800 ns) to improve data transmission efficiency. This setting is shared by both Access Point 1 and Access Point 2.
<i>Authentication</i>	Defines the access control method for the Wi-Fi network. • open: [insecure] No authentication required. Encryption is not available for this option. • shared: [insecure] Basic authentication with a WEP key. • WPA-PSK: [insecure] Pre-Shared Key authentication with WPA encryption. • WPA2-PSK: [insecure] Pre-Shared Key authentication with WPA2 encryption (AES). • WPA3-PSK: Simultaneous Authentication of Equals (SAE) with WPA3 encryption (AES). • WPA-Enterprise: [insecure] RADIUS-based authentication via an external server. • WPA2-Enterprise: RADIUS-based authentication with stronger encryption. • WPA3-Enterprise: RADIUS-based authentication with stronger encryption.
<i>Encryption</i>	Specifies the type of data encryption. • none: [insecure] No data encryption. • WEP: [insecure] Wired Equivalent Privacy. • TKIP: [insecure] Temporal Key Integrity Protocol, used for WPA. • AES: Advanced Encryption Standard, used for WPA2/WPA3.
<i>WPA PSK Type</i>	Specifies the format of the WPA Pre-Shared Key: • 256-bit secret: A 64-character hexadecimal key. • ASCII passphrase: A passphrase of 8 to 63 characters. • PSK File: The absolute path to a file containing key-MAC address pairs.
<i>WPA PSK Secret</i>	The secret key or passphrase for WPA-PSK authentication.
<i>RADIUS Auth Server IP</i>	The IPv4 or IPv6 address of the RADIUS authentication server.
<i>RADIUS Auth Password</i>	The access password for the RADIUS authentication server.
<i>RADIUS Auth Port</i>	The port number of the RADIUS authentication server (default is 1812).
<i>RADIUS Acct Server IP</i>	The IPv4 or IPv6 address of the RADIUS accounting server (if different from the authentication server).
<i>RADIUS Acct Password</i>	The access password for the RADIUS accounting server.
<i>RADIUS Acct Port</i>	The port number of the RADIUS accounting server (default is 1813).
<i>Access List</i>	Defines the mode of the client access list: • disabled: The access list is not used. • accept: Only clients in the list can access the network. • deny: Clients in the list are blocked from accessing the network.
<i>Accept/Deny List</i>	A list of client MAC addresses for network access control. Each MAC address should be entered on a new line.

Table 42: Wi-Fi configuration items description (continued)

Item	Description
<i>Syslog Level</i>	Defines the logging level for messages sent to the system log: • verbose debugging: The highest level of logging. • debugging • informational: The default logging level. • notification • warning: The lowest level of logging.
<i>Extra options</i>	Allows the user to define additional parameters for <code>hostapd</code> . The options are appended to the configuration file. Use this feature only if you are familiar with its functionality. For more information, refer to the hostapd.conf configuration file.

Table 42: Wi-Fi configuration items description (continued)

¹The availability of certain configuration options may vary depending on the specific Wi-Fi module and can be affected by the selected country code.

WiFi AP 1 Configuration			
☐ Enable WiFi AP 1 Country all countries Change <i>APs are not allowed to operate in 5 GHz and 6 GHz frequency bands in world-wide mode.</i>			
IP Address	IPv4	IPv6	
Subnet Mask / Prefix			
Bridged	no		
☐ Enable dynamic DHCP leases			
IP Pool Start	IPv4	IPv6	
IP Pool End			
Lease Time	600	600	sec 5-86400 sec
☐ Enable IPv6 prefix delegation			
Subnet ID *			
Subnet ID Width *		bits	8-32 bits
SSID			
Broadcast SSID	enabled		
SSID Isolation	disabled		
Client Isolation	disabled		
WMM	disabled		
<i>The following radio settings are common for all Access Points on the WiFi module.</i>			
Follow STA radio settings	☐		
HW Mode	IEEE 802.11b		
Bandwidth	20 MHz		
Channel	Auto		
Short GI	disabled		
Authentication	open		
Encryption	none		
WPA PSK Type	256-bit secret		
WPA PSK Secret			
RADIUS Auth Server IP			
RADIUS Auth Password			
RADIUS Auth Port *	1812		
RADIUS Acct Server IP *			
RADIUS Acct Password *			
RADIUS Acct Port *	1813		
Access List	disabled		
Accept/Deny List	Load From File...		
Syslog Level	informational		
Extra Options *			

Figure 34: Wi-Fi access point configuration page

3.6.2 Station

Warning

Important Note on Upgrading to Firmware 6.6.0

When upgrading from a firmware version prior to 6.6.0, any separate *Country* settings for the Wi-Fi Access Point (AP) and Station (STA) modes will be consolidated into a single, unified *Country* setting. This change ensures regulatory compliance and simplifies configuration. For more details, please refer to Chapter 3.6.3 *Country*.

Info

- You can easily find and connect to an available Wi-Fi network in the GUI. Navigate to *Status* → *Wi-Fi* → *WiFi Scan*, as described in Chapter 2.3.2 *Scan*.
- The router supports operating either with access point 1 (AP1) and access point 2 (AP2) enabled simultaneously, or with one access point (APx) and one station (STA) enabled at the same time.
- For networks using **WPA-Enterprise** security (RADIUS authentication), the station mode supports only the **EAP-PEAP/MSCHAPv2** (both PEAPv0 and PEAPv1) and **EAP-TLS** authentication methods.

Activate Wi-Fi station mode by checking the *Enable WiFi STA* box at the top of the *Configuration* → *WiFi* → *Station* configuration page. In this mode, the router functions as a client station, connecting to an available access point (AP) and bridging its wired connection to the Wi-Fi network. In station mode, the Wi-Fi channel and bandwidth are determined by the associated access point.

Item	Description
<i>Enable WiFi STA</i>	Enables the Wi-Fi station (STA) mode.
<i>Country</i>	A single Wi-Fi Country code applies to all AP and STA interfaces and is configured on a separate page (accessible via the <i>Change</i> button). After changing the country, you must review your radio settings.
<i>DHCP Client</i>	Activates or deactivates the DHCP client (or DHCPv6 client for IPv6).
<i>IP Address</i>	Specifies a fixed IP address for the Wi-Fi interface. Use standard IPv4 or IPv6 notation.
<i>Subnet Mask / Prefix</i>	Defines the subnet mask for an IPv4 address or the prefix length (0 to 128) for an IPv6 address.
<i>Default Gateway</i>	Specifies the IP address of the default gateway. Packets with destinations not found in the routing table are sent to this gateway.
<i>Primary DNS Server</i>	Specifies the primary IP address of the DNS server.
<i>Secondary DNS Server</i>	Specifies the secondary IP address of the DNS server.
<i>SSID</i>	The unique identifier (name) of the Wi-Fi network to connect to.
<i>Probe Hidden SSID</i>	An access point with a hidden SSID does not broadcast its name, preventing the station from connecting automatically. Enable this option to force the station to probe for a specific hidden SSID. If you are not connecting to a hidden network, keep this disabled to reduce unnecessary radio transmissions.

Table 43: WLAN configuration items description

Item	Description
<i>Authentication</i>	Access control methods for the Wi-Fi network. • open – [insecure] No authentication required. • shared: [insecure] Basic authentication with a WEP key. • WPA-PSK – [insecure] Authentication using a PSK with the WPA standard. • WPA2-PSK – [insecure] Authentication using a PSK with the WPA2 standard. • WPA3-PSK – Authentication using SAE with the WPA3 standard. • WPA-Enterprise – [insecure] Authentication using a RADIUS server with the WPA standard. • WPA2-Enterprise – Authentication using a RADIUS server with the WPA2 standard. • WPA3-Enterprise – Authentication using a RADIUS server with the WPA3 standard.
<i>Encryption</i>	The data encryption method: • none – [insecure] No encryption. • WEP – [insecure] Static encryption with WEP keys (insecure and may not be supported). • TKIP – [insecure] Legacy dynamic encryption used with WPA/WPA2. • AES – Modern dynamic encryption used with WPA2/WPA3.
<i>WPA PSK Type</i>	The format of the key for WPA-PSK authentication: • 256-bit secret – A 64-character hexadecimal key. • ASCII passphrase – A passphrase of 8 to 63 characters.
<i>WPA PSK Secret</i>	The secret key or passphrase for WPA-PSK authentication.
<i>RADIUS EAP Authentication</i>	The EAP protocol used for RADIUS authentication: • EAP-PEAP/MSCHAPv2 – Uses TLS to protect legacy EAP authentication. • EAP-TLS – Uses TLS for mutual authentication between the client and server.
<i>RADIUS CA Certificate</i>	The Certificate Authority (CA) certificate used to verify the server certificate during EAP-TLS authentication.
<i>RADIUS Local Certificate</i>	The client certificate required for EAP-TLS authentication.
<i>RADIUS Local Private Key</i>	The private key associated with the client certificate for EAP-TLS authentication.
<i>RADIUS Identity</i>	The identity (username) used to connect to the RADIUS server.
<i>RADIUS Password</i>	The password used to authenticate the RADIUS identity (for EAP-PEAP/MSCHAPv2). In the case of EAP-TLS, this field is optional and specifies the decryption key for the local private key if it is encrypted.
<i>Syslog Level</i>	The logging level for system log messages: • verbose debugging: The highest level of detail. • debugging • informational: The default level. • notification • warning: The lowest level of detail.
<i>Extra options</i>	Allows the user to define additional parameters for <code>wpa_supplicant</code> . The options are appended to the configuration file. Use this feature only if you fully understand the implications. See the wpa_supplicant.conf configuration file for details.

Table 43: WLAN configuration items description (continued)

WiFi STA Configuration		
☐ Enable WiFi STA		
Country	all countries	Change
	IPv4	IPv6
DHCP Client	enabled	enabled
IP Address		
Subnet Mask / Prefix		
Default Gateway		
Primary DNS Server		
Secondary DNS Server		
SSID		
Probe Hidden SSID	disabled	
Authentication	open	
Encryption	none	
WPA PSK Type	256-bit secret	
WPA PSK Secret		
RADIUS EAP Authentication	EAP-PEAP/MSCHAPv2	
RADIUS CA Certificate	Choose File No file chosen	
RADIUS Local Certificate	Choose File No file chosen	
RADIUS Local Private Key	Choose File No file chosen	
RADIUS Identity		
RADIUS Password		
Syslog Level	informational	
Extra options *		
<i>* can be blank</i>		
Apply		

Figure 35: Wi-Fi station configuration page

3.6.3 Country

The *Configuration* → *WiFi* → *Country* page is used to set a single, global country code that applies to all Wi-Fi interfaces, including both Access Point (AP) and Station (STA) modes. This setting is crucial for ensuring that the router's radio transmissions comply with the regulatory requirements of the region where it is operated.

From the list, select the appropriate country where the router will be used. For proper and optimal Wi-Fi functionality, **always set the correct country code**.

Alternatively, you can select the *all countries* option. Please note that in this mode, the Access Point (AP) is not permitted to operate in the 5 GHz and 6 GHz frequency bands to ensure broad regulatory compliance.¹

Warning



After selecting a new country, you must click the *Apply* button to save the change. Changing the country code may invalidate previous radio settings (such as *Channel* or *Bandwidth*). As a result, the Wi-Fi AP or STA may fail to operate until it is reconfigured. After changing the country, you must review and re-apply your Wi-Fi AP and STA configurations to ensure they are still valid and that your devices can connect.

Info

- 
- On global models, the Country Code selection is limited to *all countries* and *US* only.
 - On North American (NAM) models, this option is not available, as the country code is permanently set to *US* to comply with regional regulations.

¹If the station (STA) connects to an Access Point (AP) broadcasting a country code different from the *all countries* setting, additional channels may become available in AP mode that are otherwise restricted under the *all countries* configuration.

3.7 Backup Routes

The *Backup Routes* feature provides a powerful mechanism for managing WAN (Wide Area Network) connectivity, enabling automatic failover and load balancing across multiple Internet sources. This ensures high availability and optimizes data throughput for critical applications. The configuration is managed on the *Configuration* → *Backup Routes* page.

You can choose to let the router manage WAN connections automatically using its default priorities or customize the behavior to meet specific network requirements.

Warning

- Some WAN interfaces (e.g., Wi-Fi, secondary Ethernet ports) may not be available on all router models.
- When using default priorities, an Ethernet interface will not be considered a valid WAN connection unless it has a static IP address configured or its DHCP client is enabled.
- In default priority mode, merely unplugging an Ethernet cable will not trigger a failover. The interface must be administratively down or fail to obtain an IP address.

Default Failover

If the *Enable backup routes switching* option is unchecked, the router uses a predefined, internal priority list to select the active WAN interface. This provides a simple, plug-and-play failover mechanism. The default interface priority is as follows:

1. **Mobile WAN** (`usb0` or `usb1`)
2. **PPPoE** (`pppoe0`)
3. **Wi-Fi STA** (`wlan0`)
4. **ETH1** (`eth1`)
5. **ETH0** (`eth0`)

Based on this order, the router will only use the *ETH1* interface if the Mobile WAN, PPPoE, and Wi-Fi connections are all unavailable. In this mode, it is important to note that a LAN interface (like *ETH0*) can become a WAN interface, which may have security implications. Ensure your firewall and NAT rules are configured accordingly.

Customized Backup Routes

To gain full control over failover and load balancing, check the *Enable backup routes switching* box. This allows you to define interface priorities, connection checking parameters, and select one of three operational modes.

Backup Routes Configuration				
☐ Enable backup routes switching Mode Single WAN				
☐ Enable backup routes switching for Mobile WAN Priority 1st Weight 1-256				
☐ Enable backup routes switching for PPPoE Priority 1st Ping IP Address Ping IPv6 Address Ping Interval sec 1-86400 sec Ping Timeout 10 sec 1-86400 sec Weight 1-256				
☐ Enable backup routes switching for WiFi STA Priority 1st Ping IP Address Ping IPv6 Address Ping Interval sec 1-86400 sec Ping Timeout 10 sec 1-86400 sec Weight 1-256				
☐ Enable backup routes switching for ETH0 Priority 1st Ping IP Address Ping IPv6 Address Ping Interval sec 1-86400 sec Ping Timeout 10 sec 1-86400 sec Weight 1-256				
☐ Enable backup routes switching for ETH1 Priority 1st Ping IP Address Ping IPv6 Address Ping Interval sec 1-86400 sec Ping Timeout 10 sec 1-86400 sec Weight 1-256				

Figure 36: Backup routes configuration page

Operational Modes

The router offers three distinct modes for managing multiple WAN connections:

Item	Description
<i>Mode</i>	Selects the operational mode for managing WAN interfaces: • Single WAN: In this mode, only one WAN interface is active at a time. If the primary interface fails, the system automatically switches to the next available interface based on priority. The router is only accessible from the outside on the currently active WAN interface. • Multiple WANs: This mode is similar to Single WAN, with one key difference: the router is accessible from the outside on all enabled WAN interfaces simultaneously. Failover still occurs one interface at a time. • Load Balancing: This mode allows traffic to be distributed across multiple WAN interfaces simultaneously. You can assign a <i>Weight</i> to each interface to control the proportion of data streams it handles.

Table 44: Backup route mode descriptions

Interface Configuration

For each interface you wish to include in the custom backup system, check its *Enable backup routes switching* box and configure the following parameters.

Item	Description
<i>Priority</i>	Sets the priority of the interface (1st is highest). In failover modes, the router will always use the highest-priority active interface.
<i>Ping IP Address</i>	The destination IPv4 address or domain name for ICMP echo requests used to verify connection health.
<i>Ping IPv6 Address</i>	The destination IPv6 address or domain name for ICMP echo requests.
<i>Ping Interval</i>	The time in seconds between each ping test.
<i>Ping Timeout</i>	The time in seconds to wait for a response before considering a ping test to have failed.
<i>Weight</i>	(Load Balancing mode only) A value from 1 to 256 that determines the traffic ratio for this interface. For example, if two interfaces have weights of 4 and 1, they will handle approximately 80% and 20% of the traffic flows, respectively.

Table 45: Backup routes interface configuration

Warning

- **Load Balancing:** The traffic distribution is based on data streams, not total bandwidth. The actual data volume may not perfectly match the weight ratio, especially with a small number of concurrent connections.
- **Mobile WAN:** To use a cellular connection in a custom backup scenario, you must set *Check Connection* to *enabled* + *bind* on the *Mobile WAN* configuration page.

Backup Routes Examples

Example 1: Default Settings

If no settings are configured on the *Backup Routes* page, the system operates with the default priorities described in Section 3.7. This provides a simple, automatic failover mechanism. Figure 37 shows the default GUI configuration.



Figure 37: GUI configuration for example 1

Figure 38 illustrates the network topology for this example.

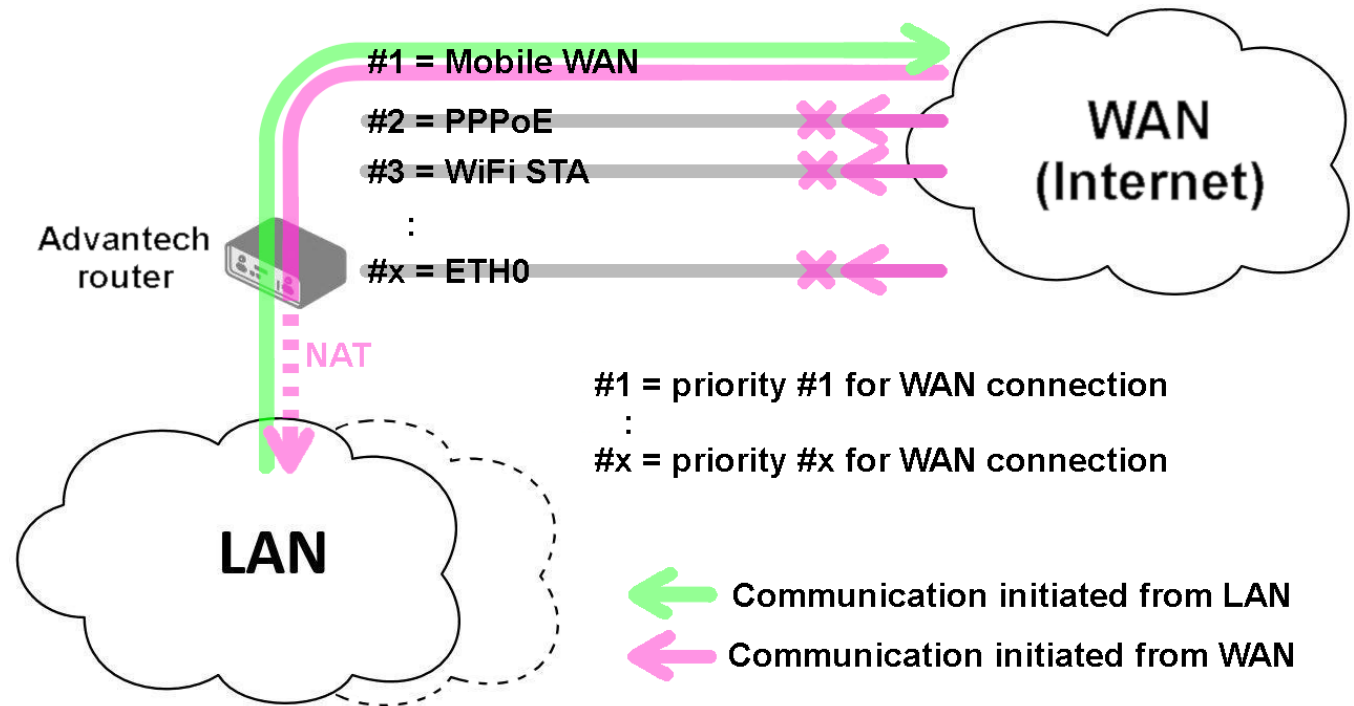


Figure 38: Network topology for example 1

Example 2: Default Route Switching

This example shows how the default system handles a primary interface failure. If the highest-priority interface (Mobile WAN) becomes unavailable, the router automatically switches to the next interface in the default priority list (PPPoE). The configuration remains untouched, as shown in Figure 39.



Figure 39: GUI configuration for example 2

Figure 40 illustrates the failover scenario.

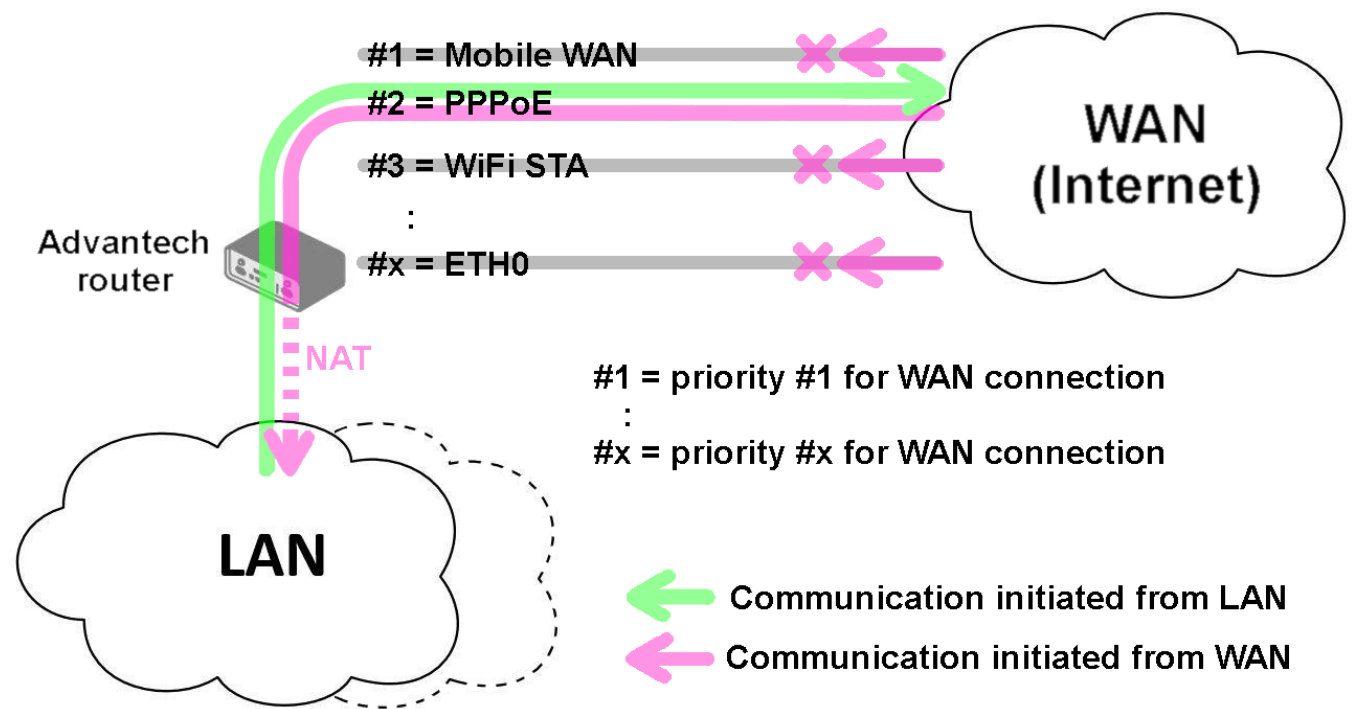


Figure 40: Network topology for example 2

Example 3: Custom Backup Routes

This example demonstrates a custom failover configuration using the Mobile WAN, PPPoE, and ETH1 interfaces. The Mobile WAN is set as the highest priority, followed by PPPoE, and finally ETH1. The connection status of the PPPoE tunnel is monitored by pinging the IP address 172.16.1.1.

Figure 41 shows the GUI configuration for this scenario.

Backup Routes Configuration			
☒ Enable backup routes switching			
Mode	Single WAN		
☒ Enable backup routes switching for Mobile WAN			
Priority	1st		
Weight		1-256	
☒ Enable backup routes switching for PPPoE			
Priority	2nd		
Ping IP Address	172.16.1.1		
Ping IPv6 Address			
Ping Interval	30	sec	1-86400 sec
Ping Timeout	10	sec	1-86400 sec
Weight		1-256	
☐ Enable backup routes switching for WiFi STA 1			
☐ Enable backup routes switching for ETH0			
☒ Enable backup routes switching for ETH1			
Priority	3rd		
Ping IP Address			
Ping IPv6 Address			
Ping Interval		sec	1-86400 sec
Ping Timeout	10	sec	1-86400 sec
Weight		1-256	
Apply			

Figure 41: GUI configuration for example 3

Figure 42 illustrates the topology for *Single WAN* mode. If the Mobile WAN connection fails, the router will failover to the PPPoE tunnel.

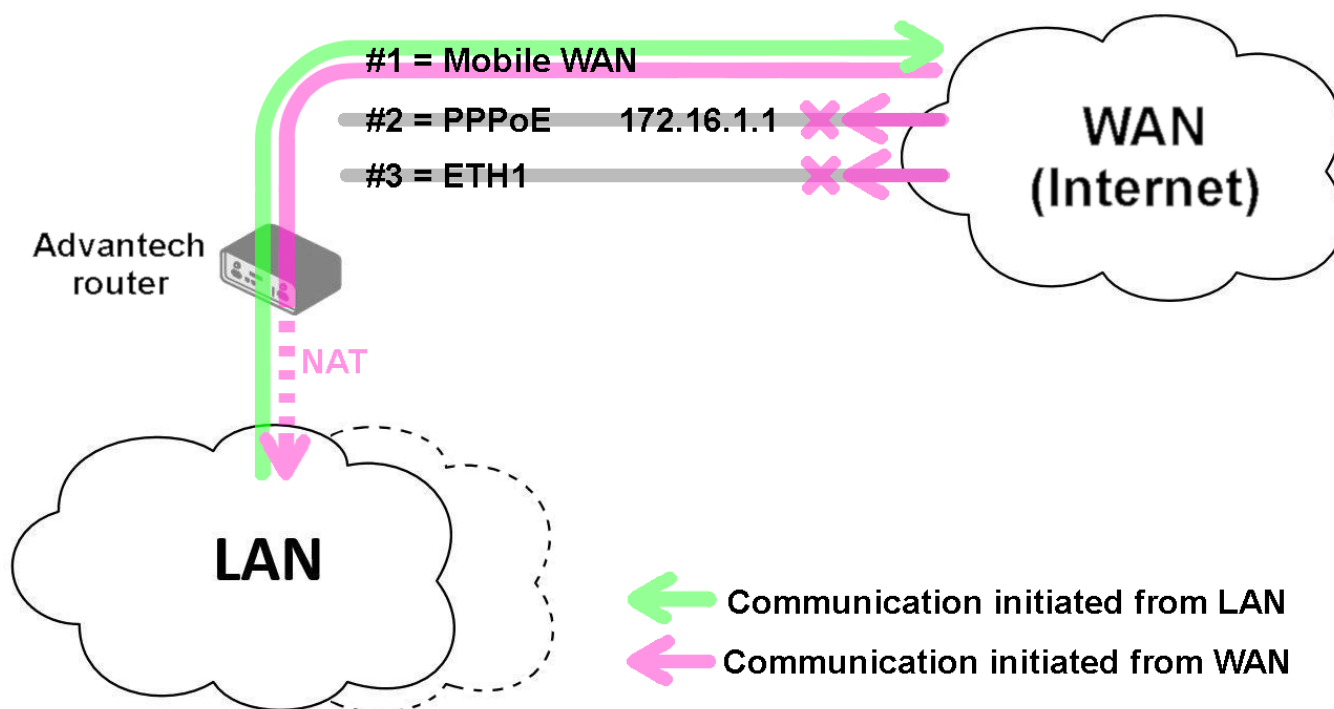


Figure 42: Single WAN mode topology for example 3

Figure 43 shows the same topology in *Multiple WANs* mode. The key difference is that the router can be accessed from the Internet via the public IP addresses of all three interfaces simultaneously, even though only one is used for outbound traffic at a time.

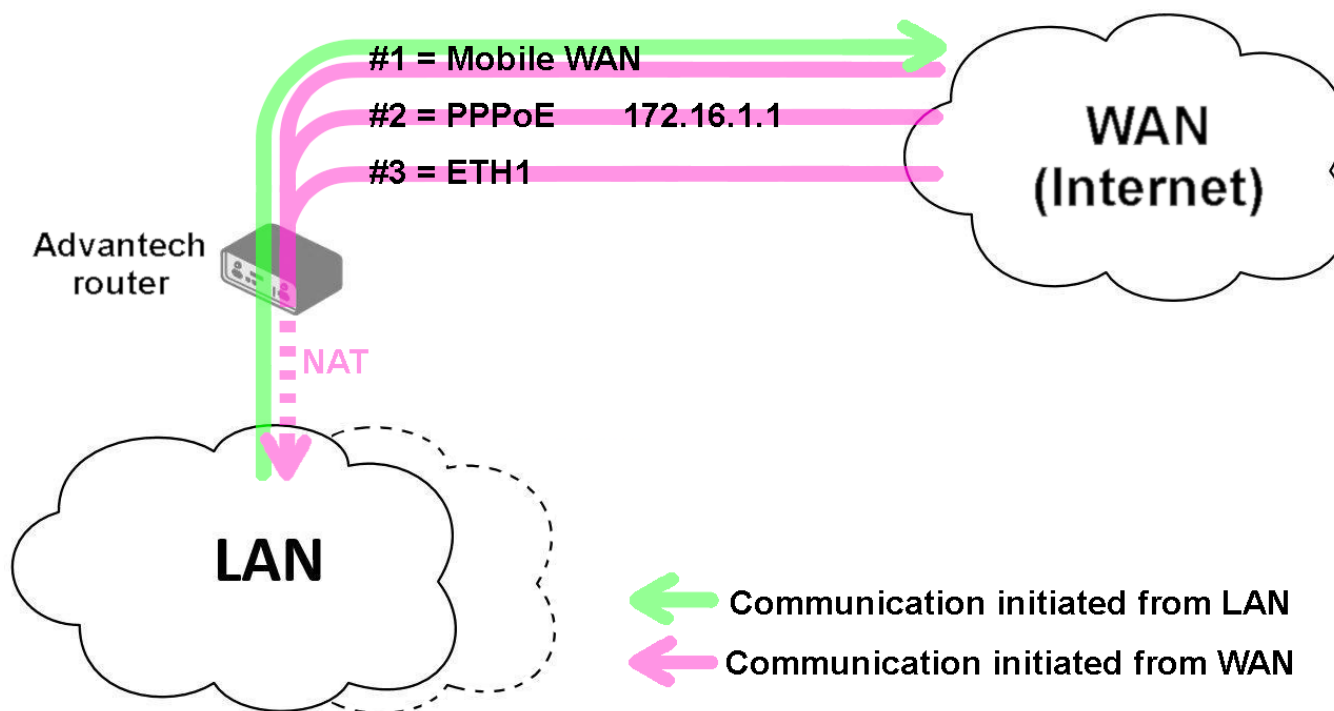


Figure 43: Multiple WANs mode topology for example 3

Example 4: Load Balancing Mode

This example shows a simple load balancing configuration between the Mobile WAN and a PPPoE interface. The weights are set to 4 and 1, respectively, meaning the Mobile WAN will handle approximately 80% of traffic streams, while the PPPoE interface will handle the remaining 20%. Figure 44 shows the GUI configuration.

Backup Routes Configuration

☒ Enable backup routes switching

Mode

Load Balancing

☒ Enable backup routes switching for Mobile WAN

Priority

1st

Weight

4

1-256

☒ Enable backup routes switching for PPPoE

Priority

2nd

Ping IP Address

Ping IPv6 Address

Ping Interval

sec

1-86400 sec

Ping Timeout

10

sec

1-86400 sec

Weight

1

1-256

Figure 44: GUI configuration for example 4

Figure 45 illustrates the corresponding network topology.

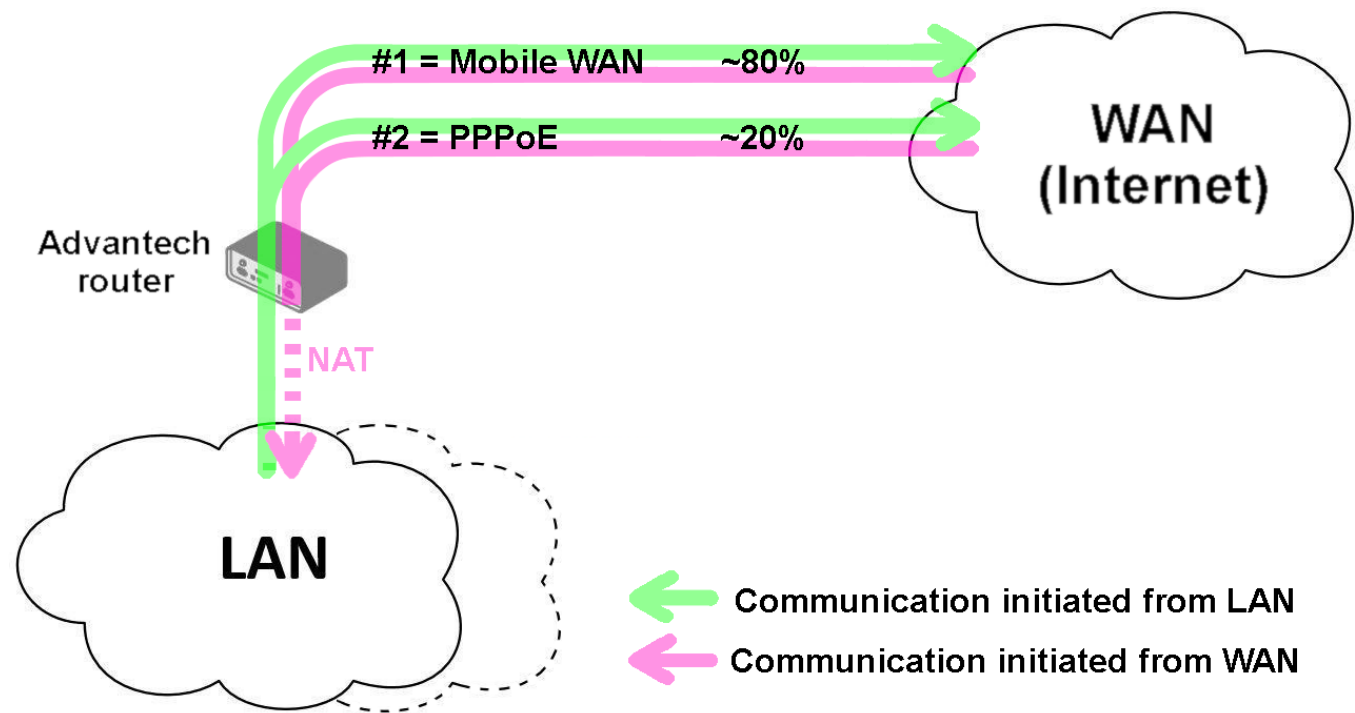
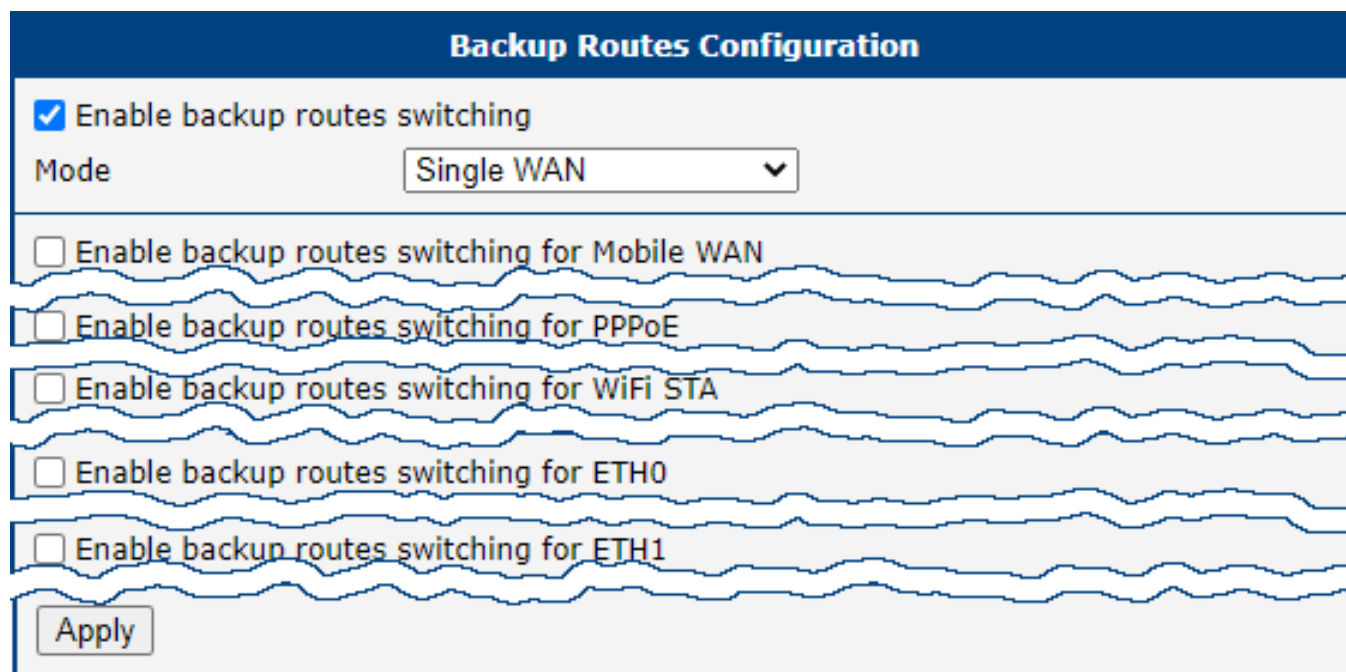


Figure 45: Network topology for example 4

Example 5: No WAN Routes

If *Backup Routes* is enabled but no interfaces are selected for WAN routing, the router will not have a dedicated WAN connection. In this state, it functions purely as a LAN router, forwarding traffic between its local network segments. The Mobile WAN interface will not be used, even if it is connected to a cellular network. Figure 46 shows this configuration.



Backup Routes Configuration

☒ Enable backup routes switching

Mode Single WAN

☐ Enable backup routes switching for Mobile WAN

☐ Enable backup routes switching for PPPoE

☐ Enable backup routes switching for WiFi STA

☐ Enable backup routes switching for ETH0

☐ Enable backup routes switching for ETH1

Figure 46: GUI configuration for example 5

Figure 47 illustrates the resulting topology.

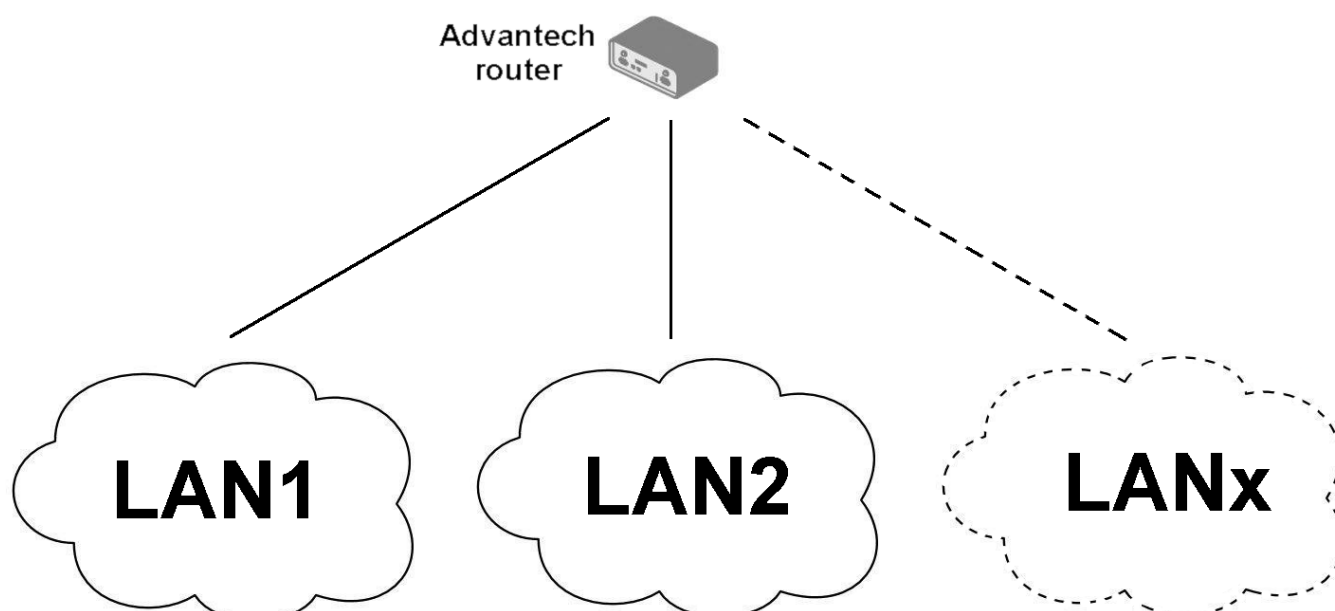


Figure 47: Network topology for example 5

3.8 Static Routes

Static routes are manually configured, fixed paths that define how the router should forward traffic to a specific destination network or host. Unlike dynamic routes, which are learned automatically, static routes do not change unless they are manually updated. They are ideal for small, stable networks or for defining a specific path that must always be used.

The configuration is managed on the *Static Routes* page. The router provides separate configuration tables for IPv4 and IPv6, each supporting up to thirty-two individual static routes. A new row is automatically added as you fill in the previous one.

IPv4 Static Routes Configuration

☐ Enable IPv4 static routes

	Destination Network	Mask or Prefix Length	Gateway *	Metric *	Interface
1					ETH0 ▾
2					ETH0 ▾

Maximum: 32 items
* can be blank

* can be blank

Figure 48: Static routes configuration page

The parameters for defining a static route are described below.

Item	Description
<i>Enable IPv4 static routes</i>	The master switch for the static routing feature. If this is unchecked, all static routes are disabled. Individual routes must also be enabled using the checkbox in their respective rows.
<i>Destination Network</i>	The IP address of the target network or host for which this route is being created.
<i>Mask or Prefix Length</i>	The subnet mask (for IPv4) or prefix length (for IPv6) of the destination network.
<i>Gateway</i>	The IP address of the next-hop router that will be used to reach the destination network.
<i>Metric</i>	A numerical value (0-65535) representing the route's priority. A lower metric indicates a more preferred route.
<i>Interface¹</i>	The network interface through which the specified gateway is reachable.

Table 46: Static routes configuration options

¹The *Any* option allows for the creation of routes where the gateway may not be directly connected, such as a GRE tunnel endpoint. When *Any* is selected, specifying a *Gateway* is mandatory, as it determines which interface will be used.

3.9 Firewall

The router’s firewall allows you to control both incoming and outgoing IP traffic. The router supports independent IPv4 and IPv6 firewalls, including a dual-stack configuration for both protocols.



Info

Understanding Firewall Zones

The router’s firewall simplifies rule creation by grouping network interfaces into two logical zones based on their configured function: **LAN** (trusted) and **WAN** (untrusted). This assignment, not the interface name (e.g., `eth1`, `wlan0`), determines how the firewall treats its traffic.

- **LAN Zone (Trusted):** Contains all interfaces configured for your internal, local network. By default, this typically includes the Ethernet LAN ports (e.g., `eth0`, `eth1`) and any configured Wi-Fi Access Points (`wlanX`).
- **WAN Zone (Untrusted):** Contains all interfaces configured to connect to external networks like the Internet. Common examples include the cellular module (`usb0`), an Ethernet port re-configured for WAN use, or a Wi-Fi client (STA) connection (`wlanX`). For details on configuring backup WAN interfaces, see Chapter 3.7 *Backup Routes*.

Default Behavior

By default, the firewall blocks all unsolicited incoming traffic from the WAN zone. Outbound traffic originating from the trusted LAN zone to the untrusted WAN zone is permitted. It is strongly recommended to review and customize the firewall rules to match your specific security requirements.

Clicking the *Firewall* item in the *Configuration* menu on the left expands it into three submenus: *IPv4*, *IPv6*, and *Sites*.

Figure 49 displays the default configuration page for the IPv4 firewall. The configuration fields are identical for both the *IPv4* and *IPv6* forms.

IPv4 Firewall Configuration

☒ Enable filtering of incoming packets

	Source *	Protocol	Target Port(s) *	Action	Description *
1		all		allow	
2		all		allow	

Maximum 64 items

☒ Enable filtering of forwarded packets

	Source Address(es) *	Destination Address(es) *	Protocol	Target Port(s) *	Input Interface	Output Interface	Action	Description *
1	☒		all		any	any	allow	Default rule for outgoing connections
2	☐		all		any	any	allow	
3	☐		all		any	any	allow	

Maximum 64 items

☒ Enable filtering of locally destined packets

☒ Enable protection against DoS attacks

* can be blank

Apply

Figure 49: IPv4 default firewall configuration

Info

Starting with firmware version 6.6.0, rule descriptions are stored directly as comments in the system's iptables configuration. This allows users to easily identify rules created via the web interface when managing the firewall from the command line (e.g., using `iptables-save`).

The first section of the configuration form defines the **incoming firewall policy**. If the *Enable filtering of incoming packets* checkbox is unchecked, all incoming connections are accepted. When enabled, and if connections originate from the WAN interface, the router checks them against the PREROUTING chain in the mangle table. The router accepts a connection only if a matching rule exists with the *Action* set to *allow*; otherwise, if no matching rule is found or the *Action* is set to *deny*, the connection is dropped.

You can define up to sixty-four rules based on IP addresses, protocols, and ports. Each rule can be enabled or disabled using the checkbox on the left of its row. A new row for the next rule appears automatically after filling in the previous one. See Table 47 for a description of the incoming rule definitions.

Please note that incoming rules apply only to connections originating **from the WAN zone**. For details on priority rules related to WAN interfaces, refer to Chapter 3.7.

Item	Description
<i>Source</i> ¹	Specifies the IP address to which the rule applies. Use an IPv4 address in the <i>IPv4 Firewall Configuration</i> and an IPv6 address in the <i>IPv6 Firewall Configuration</i> .
<i>Protocol</i>	Specifies the protocol to which the rule applies: • all – The rule applies to all protocols. • TCP – The rule applies to the TCP protocol. • UDP – The rule applies to the UDP protocol. • GRE – The rule applies to the GRE protocol. • ESP – The rule applies to the ESP protocol. • ICMP/ICMPv6 – The rule applies to the ICMP protocol (ICMPv6 for IPv6 firewall).
<i>Target Port(s)</i>	Specifies the port number or range. Enter a single port or a range separated by a hyphen (e.g., 1020-1040).
<i>Action</i>	Specifies the action the router performs: • allow – Permits the packets to enter the network. • deny – Blocks the packets from entering the network.
<i>Description</i>	A user-defined description for the rule, which is stored as a comment in iptables.

Table 47: Incoming packet filtering

The next section defines the **forwarding firewall policy**. If the *Enable filtering of forwarded packets* checkbox is unchecked, all incoming packets are forwarded. When enabled, and if a packet is addressed to another network interface, the router processes it through the FORWARD chain in iptables. If the FORWARD chain accepts the packet, the router forwards it, provided there is a corresponding entry in the routing table.

You can define up to sixty-four forwarding rules. A new row appears automatically after filling in the previous one. The forwarding settings can be applied to specific interfaces, providing granular control over traffic flow.

¹This field supports IP address input in the formats: `IP`, `IP/mask`, or `IP_start-IP_end`.

The configuration form includes a table for specifying filter rules. See Table 48 for a description of the forwarding rule definitions.

Info

As shown in Figure 49, the second entry in the IPv6 forwarded packets configuration is the default firewall rule for NAT64, which is disabled by default. To enable the NAT64 function, navigate to *Configuration* → *NAT* → *IPv6* → *Enable NAT64*.

Item	Description
<i>Source Address(es)</i> ¹	Specifies the source IP address to which the rule applies (IPv4 or IPv6).
<i>Destination Address(es)</i> ¹	Specifies the destination IP address to which the rule applies (IPv4 or IPv6).
<i>Protocol</i>	Specifies the protocol to which the rule applies: • all, TCP, UDP, GRE, ESP, ICMP/ICMPv6.
<i>Target Port(s)</i>	Specifies the target port number or range.
<i>Input Interface</i>	Specifies the interface on which the packet is received. Options include any , WAN zone, LAN zone, or specific interfaces like Ethernet, Bridge, VLAN, Mobile, PPPoE, Wi-Fi, and VPN interfaces.
<i>Output Interface</i>	Specifies the interface through which the packet will be sent. The available options are the same as for the <i>Input Interface</i> .
<i>Action</i>	Defines the action the router performs: • allow – Permits the packets to be forwarded. • deny – Blocks the packets from being forwarded.
<i>Description</i>	A user-defined description for the rule, which is stored as a comment in iptables.

Table 48: Forward packet filtering

When the *Enable filtering of locally destined packets* function is enabled, the router automatically drops packets requesting an unsupported service without sending any notification.

To protect against DoS (Denial of Service) attacks, the *Enable protection against DoS attacks* option limits the number of allowed connections per second to three. A DoS attack floods the target system with excessive requests, overwhelming its resources.

¹This field supports IP address input in the formats: `IP`, `IP/mask`, or `IP_start-IP_end`.

Firewall Configuration Example

In this example, the router is configured to permit the following access:

- Access from IP address 198.51.100.45 using any protocol.
- Access from the IP address range 192.0.2.123 to 192.0.3.127 using the TCP protocol on port 1000.
- Access from IP address 203.0.113.67 using the ICMP protocol.
- Access from IP address 203.0.113.67 using the TCP protocol on target ports ranging from 1020 to 1040.

See the network topology and configuration form in the figures below.

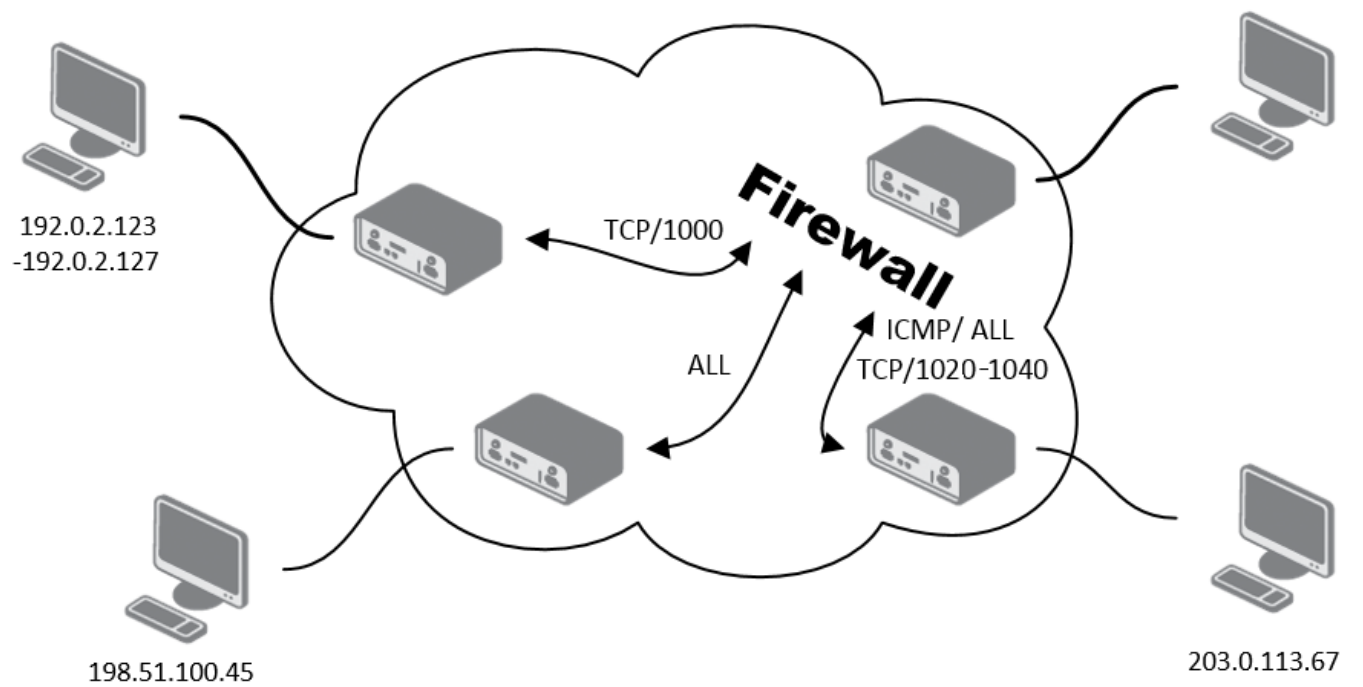


Figure 50: IPv4 firewall configuration topology example

IPv4 Firewall Configuration								
☒ Enable filtering of incoming packets								
	Source *	Protocol	Target Port(s) *	Action	Description *			
1	☒ 198.51.100.45	all		allow				
2	☒ 192.0.2.123-192.0.2.127	TCP	1000	allow				
3	☒ 203.0.113.67	ICMP		allow				
4	☒ 203.0.113.67	TCP	1020-1040	allow				
5	☐	all		allow				
6	☐	all		allow				
Maximum 32 items								
☐ Enable filtering of forwarded packets								
	Source Address(es) *	Destination Address(es) *	Protocol	Target Port(s) *	Input Interface	Output Interface	Action	Description *
1	☐		all		any	any	allow	
2	☐		all		any	any	allow	
Maximum 32 items								
☐ Enable filtering of locally destined packets								
☐ Enable protection against DoS attacks								
* can be blank								
Apply								

Figure 51: IPv4 firewall configuration example

3.9.1 Sites

Info

This feature works only if the device is using the router as its DNS server.

On the *Sites* configuration page, you can define specific URLs that you want the firewall to block (see Figure 52). To enable this feature, check the *Enable sites blocking* option.

You can then build your blocklist in two ways:

- Manually enter each URL into the *Block list* box, placing each one on a new line.
- Use the *Load From File...* button to import a predefined list of URLs from a plain text file.

Sites Blocking Configuration

☒ Enable sites blocking

Block list

```
https://www.example.com
http://www.socialmedia.com
https://www.streaming-site.comobsahem.
https://www.gambling.com
http://www.malicious-site.com
```

Load From File...

Apply

Figure 52: Firewall sites configuration page

3.10 NAT

Network Address Translation (NAT) is a fundamental networking function that modifies IP address information in packet headers while they are in transit. The router implements NAPT (Network Address and Port Translation), also known as PAT (Port Address Translation) or IP masquerading, which allows multiple devices in a private network to share a single public IP address.

The NAT configuration is managed on the *Configuration* → *NAT* page, which has separate subpages for *IPv4* and *IPv6*.

IPv4 NAT Configuration

	Public Port(s)	Private Port(s)	Type	Server IP Address	Description *
1			TCP ▼		
2			TCP ▼		

Maximum 64 items

☐ Enable remote HTTP access on port

☒ Enable remote HTTPS access on port

☐ Enable remote FTP access on port

☒ Enable remote SSH access on port

☐ Enable remote Telnet access on port

☒ Enable remote SNMP access on port

☐ Send all remaining incoming packets to default server
 Default Server IP Address

☒ Masquerade outgoing packets
☐ Enable SIP ALG
☒ Enable FTP Helper on public port(s)
☐ Enable PPTP Helper on public port(s)

* can be blank

Figure 53: NAT IPv4 configuration page

Port Forwarding

Port forwarding, also known as destination NAT (DNAT), allows external devices to connect to a specific service on a device within the private LAN. You can define up to sixty-four port forwarding rules.

Item	Description
<i>Public Port(s)</i>	The external port or port range on the router's WAN interface. A single port or a range (e.g., 8000-8010) can be specified.
<i>Private Port(s)</i>	The internal port or port range on the destination server.
<i>Type</i>	The protocol for the rule: <i>TCP</i> or <i>UDP</i> .
<i>Server IP Address</i>	The private IPv4 or IPv6 address of the server on the LAN to which traffic will be forwarded.
<i>Description</i>	An optional description for the rule.

Table 49: Port forwarding rule configuration

For configurations requiring more than sixty-four rules, additional rules can be added to the startup script (*Configuration* → *Scripts*). Use the following `iptables` command format for IPv4:

```
iptables -t nat -A pre_nat -p tcp --dport [PORT_PUBLIC] -j DNAT \
--to-destination [IPADDR]:[PORT_PRIVATE]
```

For IPv6, use the `ip6tables` command:

```
ip6tables -t nat -A pre_nat -p tcp --dport [PORT_PUBLIC] -j DNAT \
--to-destination [IP6ADDR]:[PORT_PRIVATE]
```

Remote Access

This section allows you to enable remote access to the router's own management services from the WAN interface.

Item	Description
<i>Enable remote HTTP access on port</i>	Enables remote access to the router's web interface via HTTP on the specified port. If the HTTP service is disabled in the <i>Services</i> → <i>HTTP</i> configuration while HTTPS is enabled, incoming requests on this port will be automatically redirected to the secure HTTPS interface.
<i>Enable remote HTTPS access on port</i>	Allows secure remote access to the router's web interface via HTTPS on the specified port.
<i>Enable remote FTP access on port</i>	Allows remote access to the router's FTP server on the specified port.
<i>Enable remote SSH access on port</i>	Allows remote access to the router's command-line interface via SSH on the specified port.
<i>Enable remote Telnet access on port</i>	Allows remote access to the router's command-line interface via Telnet on the specified port.
<i>Enable remote SNMP access on port</i>	Allows remote management and monitoring of the router via SNMP on the specified port.

Table 50: Remote access configuration options

Warning

For secure management, always use HTTPS access. The HTTP remote access option is for redirection only. Exposing unsecured services to the Internet poses a significant security risk and should be avoided.

Default Server and NAT Helpers

This section contains advanced NAT features, including a “default server” or DMZ setting, and Application-Layer Gateways (ALGs) for specific protocols.

Item	Description
<i>Send all remaining incoming packets to default server</i>	When enabled, all incoming traffic from the WAN that does not match any other port forwarding rule is forwarded to the specified default server. This is often referred to as a DMZ.
<i>Default Server Address</i>	The private IPv4 or IPv6 address of the default server.
<i>Enable NAT64</i>	(IPv6 only) Activates NAT64 translation, allowing IPv6-only clients to communicate with IPv4-only services. Requires a corresponding firewall rule to be effective.
<i>Masquerade outgoing packets</i>	Enables source NAT (SNAT) for all outgoing traffic, making it appear to originate from the router’s public WAN IP address. This should almost always be enabled.
<i>Enable SIP ALG</i>	(IPv4 only) Enables the Session Initiation Protocol Application-Layer Gateway, which helps VoIP traffic traverse NAT by modifying SIP packet headers.
<i>Enable FTP Helper</i>	Assists with NAT traversal for the FTP protocol, particularly for active mode FTP, on the specified port (default is 21).
<i>Enable PPTP Helper</i>	(IPv4 only) Assists with NAT traversal for the Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol (PPTP) for VPN connections on the specified port (default is 1723).

Table 51: Default server and NAT helper configuration

Warning

The NAT64 functionality is based on the *Jool* implementation, which has certain limitations. It is not possible to connect to the router itself using its NAT64-mapped IPv4 address (e.g., `64:ff9b::192.0.2.1`). Furthermore, firewall rules for NAT64 traffic must be created in the input chain, not the forward chain, as Jool processes the packets as if they originate from the router itself.

NAT Configuration Examples

Example 1: Forward All Traffic to a Single Device (DMZ)

This configuration forwards all incoming traffic from the Internet to a single device on the LAN, effectively placing it in a Demilitarized Zone (DMZ).

- 1. Enable the *Send all remaining incoming packets to default server* option.
- 2. Enter the IP address of the target device in the *Default Server IP Address* field.

The LAN device must be configured to use the router's IP address as its default gateway. With this setup, a ping request to the router's public SIM card IP address will be answered by the device, not the router.

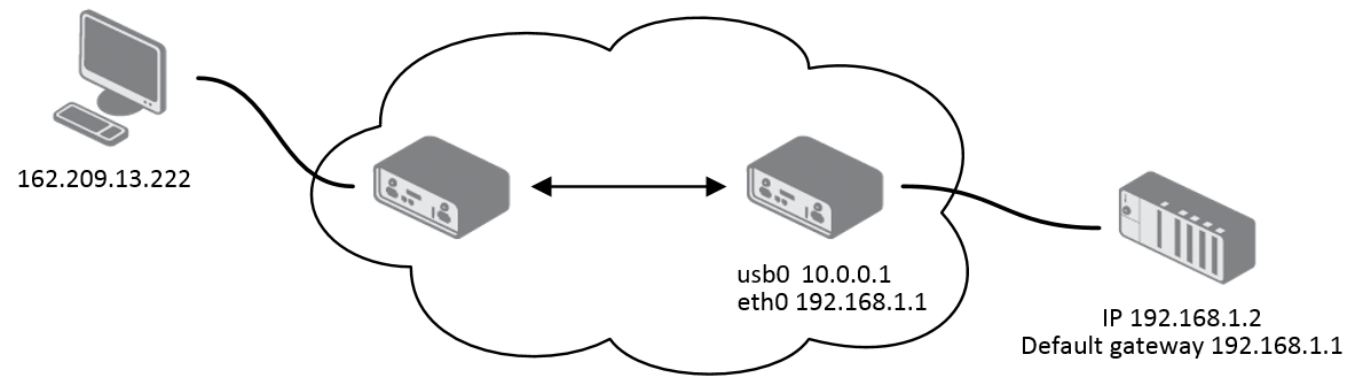


Figure 54: Topology for NAT example 1

IPv4 NAT Configuration

	Public Port(s)	Private Port(s)	Type	Server IP Address	Description *
1			TCP ▾		
2			TCP ▾		

Maximum 64 items

☐ Enable remote HTTP access on port

☐ Enable remote HTTPS access on port

☐ Enable remote FTP access on port

☐ Enable remote SSH access on port

☐ Enable remote Telnet access on port

☒ Enable remote SNMP access on port

☒ Send all remaining incoming packets to default server

Default Server IP Address

☒ Masquerade outgoing packets

☐ Enable SIP ALG

☒ Enable FTP Helper on public port(s)

☐ Enable PPTP Helper on public port(s)

* can be blank

Figure 55: NAT configuration for example 1

Example 2: Port Forwarding to Multiple Devices

This example shows how to make services on multiple internal devices accessible from the Internet using port forwarding. A different public port is mapped to a service on each internal server.

For instance, to make a web server on device 192.168.1.2 (port 80) accessible via public port 81, you would create the following rule:

- **Public Port(s):** 81
- **Private Port(s):** 80
- **Type:** TCP
- **Server IP Address:** 192.168.1.2

External users could then access the web server by navigating to http://<router_public_ip>:81. Since the Send all remaining incoming packets... option is disabled, any traffic not matching a specific rule will be dropped by the router.

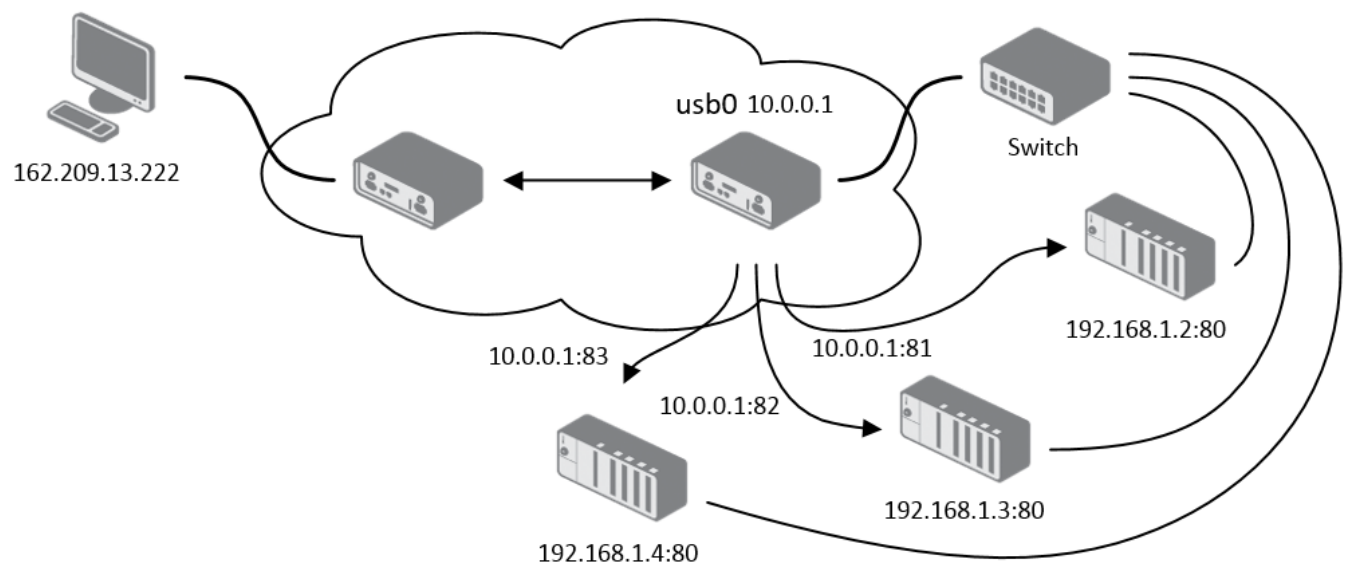


Figure 56: Topology for NAT example 2

IPv4 NAT Configuration					
	Public Port(s)	Private Port(s)	Type	Server IP Address	Description *
1	81	80	TCP	192.168.1.2	
2	82	80	TCP	192.168.1.3	
3	83	80	TCP	192.168.1.4	
Maximum 64 items					
☐ Enable remote HTTP access on port 80					
☐ Enable remote HTTPS access on port 443					
☐ Enable remote FTP access on port 21					
☐ Enable remote SSH access on port 22					
☐ Enable remote Telnet access on port 23					
☒ Enable remote SNMP access on port 161					
☐ Send all remaining incoming packets to default server					
Default Server IP Address					
☒ Masquerade outgoing packets					
☐ Enable SIP ALG					
☒ Enable FTP Helper on public port(s) 21					
☐ Enable PPTP Helper on public port(s) 1723					

Figure 57: NAT configuration for example 2

3.11 OpenVPN

OpenVPN is a robust and highly flexible Virtual Private Network (VPN) solution that creates secure point-to-point or site-to-site connections over the Internet. The router supports up to four concurrent OpenVPN tunnels, each with its own configuration. Both IPv4 and IPv6 are supported in a dual-stack configuration.

The settings are managed on the *Configuration* → *OpenVPN* page, which contains separate tabs for each tunnel.

1st OpenVPN Tunnel Configuration			
☐ Create 1st OpenVPN tunnel			
Description *			
Interface Type	TUN ▼		
Protocol	UDP ▼		
UDP Port	1194		
1st Remote IP Address *			
2nd Remote IP Address *			
Remote Subnet *			
Remote Subnet Mask *			
Redirect Gateway	no ▼		
Local Interface IP Address			
Remote Interface IP Address			
Remote IPv6 Subnet *			
Remote IPv6 Subnet Prefix Length *			
Local Interface IPv6 Address *			
Remote Interface IPv6 Address *			
Ping Interval *		sec	1-86400 sec
Ping Timeout *		sec	1-86400 sec
Renegotiate Interval *		sec	0-86400 sec
Max Fragment Size *		bytes	128-16384 bytes
Compression	LZO ▼		
NAT Rules	not applied ▼		
Authenticate Mode	none ▼		
Security Mode	tls-auth ▼		
Pre-shared Secret			
CA Certificate			
DH Parameters			
Local Certificate			
Local Private Key			
Local Passphrase *			
Username			
Password			
Security Level	0 - Weak ▼		
User's Up Script			
User's Down Script			
Extra Options *			

Figure 58: OpenVPN tunnel configuration page

Tunnel Configuration

The following tables describe the available parameters for configuring an OpenVPN tunnel.

Item	Description
<i>Description</i>	An optional name or description for the tunnel.
<i>Interface Type</i>	Determines the layer at which the VPN operates: • TUN (default): A routed VPN that operates at the network layer (Layer 3). This is the most common mode. • TAP: A bridged VPN that operates at the data link layer (Layer 2). This requires a bridge to be configured on the corresponding Ethernet interface.
<i>Protocol</i>	The transport protocol for the VPN tunnel: • UDP/UDPv6: Uses UDP for transport. This is generally faster and is the recommended default. • TCP/TCPv6 Server: Uses TCP and configures the router to act as a server, listening for incoming client connections. • TCP/TCPv6 Client: Uses TCP and configures the router to act as a client, initiating a connection to a remote server.
<i>UDP/TCP port</i>	The port number for the selected protocol. The default is 1194.
<i>1st/2nd Remote IP Address</i>	The IPv4 address, IPv6 address, or domain name of the remote OpenVPN server. A second address can be provided for redundancy.
<i>Remote Subnet</i>	The IPv4 address of the remote network behind the tunnel.
<i>Remote Subnet Mask</i>	The subnet mask of the remote IPv4 network.
<i>Redirect Gateway</i>	If enabled, all of the router's outbound traffic will be sent through the VPN tunnel.
<i>Local/Remote Interface IP Address</i>	The virtual IPv4 addresses for the local and remote endpoints of the tunnel interface itself.
<i>Remote IPv6 Subnet</i>	The IPv6 prefix of the remote network behind the tunnel.
<i>Remote IPv6 Prefix</i>	The prefix length of the remote IPv6 network.
<i>Local/Remote Interface IPv6 Address</i>	The virtual IPv6 addresses for the local and remote endpoints of the tunnel interface.
<i>Ping Interval</i>	The interval in seconds at which keep-alive packets are sent to the remote peer.
<i>Ping Timeout</i>	The time in seconds to wait for a response before considering the tunnel to be down. This value should be greater than the <i>Ping Interval</i> .
<i>Renegotiate Interval</i>	The time in seconds before the session key is renegotiated. This does not apply when using the <i>Pre-shared Secret</i> authentication mode.
<i>Max Fragment Size</i>	The maximum size in bytes of a packet before it is fragmented.
<i>Compression</i>	Configures data compression for the VPN tunnel. • None: [Recommended] No compression is used. This is the most secure setting and avoids any known vulnerabilities. • LZO: [Deprecated, factory default] Uses the legacy LZO lossless compression algorithm. This option is insecure due to the VORACLE vulnerability and is pending removal from future OpenVPN versions. Its use is strongly discouraged and it is provided only for backward compatibility with legacy systems. A newly created tunnel uses this option by default — change it to None unless compatibility with a legacy peer is required.
<i>NAT Rules</i>	Determines if NAT should be applied to traffic passing through the tunnel.

Table 52: OpenVPN configuration items

Authentication and Security

OpenVPN offers multiple methods for authentication, allowing for flexible and highly secure configurations.

Item	Description
<i>Authenticate Mode</i>	Selects the method used to authenticate the VPN peers: • none: No authentication. Not recommended for production use. • pre-shared secret: Uses a static, pre-shared key for authentication. • username / password: Authenticates using a username, password, and a common CA certificate. • X.509 cert.: Uses a full Public Key Infrastructure (PKI) with certificates for authentication. Can be configured in client, server, or multi-client server mode.
<i>Security Mode</i>	Configures an additional HMAC layer for verifying control channel packets: • tls-auth: Authenticates control channel packets. • tls-crypt: Encrypts and authenticates control channel packets, providing better protection against DoS attacks. This is the recommended mode.
<i>Pre-shared Secret</i>	The static key used for <i>Pre-shared secret</i> authentication mode or as the HMAC key for <i>Security Mode</i> .
<i>CA Certificate</i>	The certificate of the Certificate Authority that signed the client and server certificates.
<i>DH Parameters</i>	The Diffie-Hellman parameters file, required for server-side X.509 configurations.
<i>Local Certificate</i>	The public certificate for this router.
<i>Local Private Key</i>	The private key corresponding to the local certificate.
<i>Local Passphrase</i>	The passphrase used to protect the local private key file.
<i>Username/Password</i>	The credentials used for the <i>Username/password</i> authentication mode.
<i>Security Level</i> ¹	Applies only when <i>Authenticate Mode</i> is set to <i>X.509 cert.</i> ; it has no effect for <i>none</i> , <i>pre-shared secret</i> , or <i>username / password</i> mode. Sets the minimum cryptographic strength for the connection by controlling which TLS versions and cipher suites are permitted. Higher levels disable older, less secure algorithms. • 0 - Weak: Allows all cryptographic suites, including insecure legacy algorithms. This level is not recommended and should only be used for compatibility with outdated systems. [Default] • 1 - Low: Provides a baseline of 80-bit security. • 2 - Medium: Enforces a minimum of 112-bit security. • 3 - High: Enforces a minimum of 128-bit security (e.g., requires AES-128 or stronger). • 4 - Very High: Enforces a minimum of 192-bit security (e.g., requires AES-192 or stronger).
<i>User's Up/Down Script</i> ²	Custom shell scripts that are executed when the tunnel is established or torn down.
<i>Extra Options</i>	A field for adding any additional OpenVPN command-line parameters.

Table 53: Authentication and security options

¹For a detailed explanation of security levels, see the *Security Guidelines* [15], specifically the chapter on *Cryptographic algorithms*.

²The script is passed the following parameters: `cmd tun_dev tun_mtu link_mtu ifconfig_local_ip ifconfig_remote_ip [ init | restart ]`. See the official *OpenVPN Reference Manual* for details on the `-up` option.

Info

- An active WAN connection is required for an OpenVPN tunnel to be established, even if the tunnel's traffic is not intended to traverse that WAN.
- When using high security levels with TLS 1.3, it is recommended to use Elliptic Curve (EC) keys instead of RSA keys. Alternatively, you can limit the TLS version to 1.2 by adding `--tls-version-max 1.2` in the *Extra Options* field.

Configuration Example

This example shows a basic site-to-site OpenVPN tunnel between two routers, Router A and Router B.

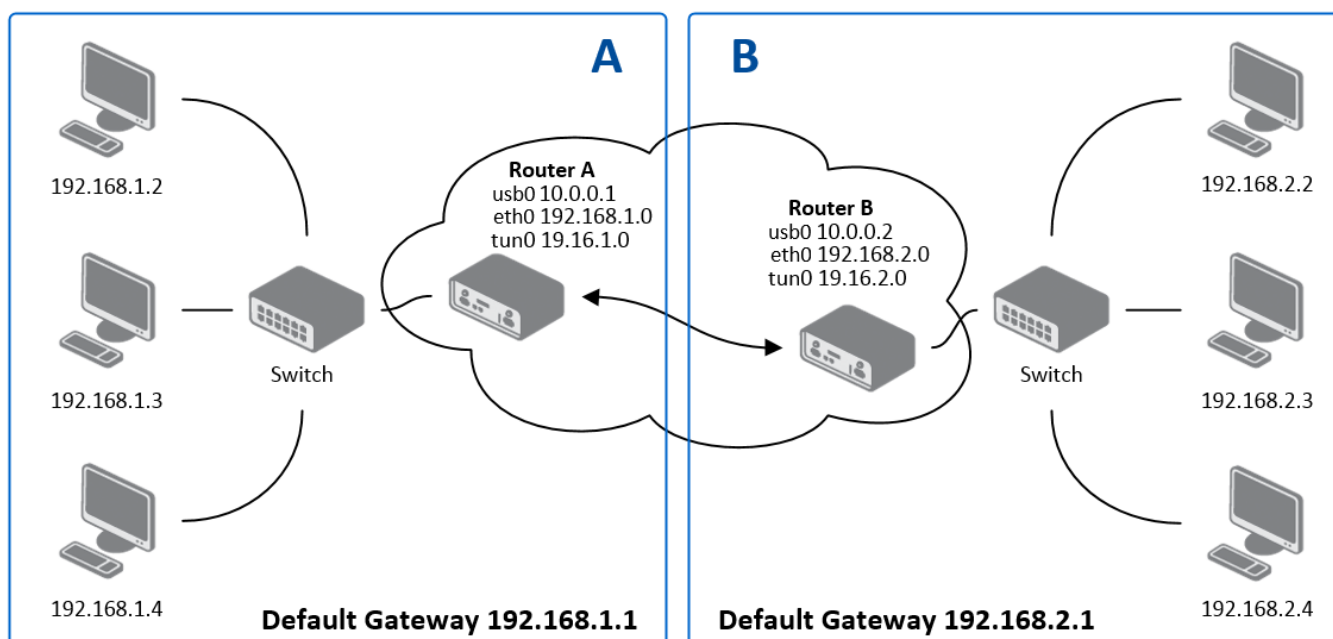


Figure 59: An example of OpenVPN topology

Parameter	Router A	Router B
Protocol	UDP	UDP
UDP Port	1194	1194
Remote IP Address	10.0.0.2	10.0.0.1
Remote Subnet	192.168.2.0	192.168.1.0
Remote Subnet Mask	255.255.255.0	255.255.255.0
Local Interface IP	19.16.1.0	19.16.2.0
Remote Interface IP	19.16.2.0	19.16.1.0
Compression	none	none
Authentication Mode	none	none

Table 54: OpenVPN configuration example

Info

For more detailed examples, including certificate-based authentication, please refer to the *OpenVPN Tunnel Application Note* [6].

3.12 IPsec

The IPsec tunnel function allows you to create a secure connection between two separate LAN networks. This router family allows you to create up to four IPsec tunnels.

To open the IPsec tunnel configuration page, click *IPsec* in the *Configuration* section of the main menu. The menu item will expand, and you will see separate configuration pages: *1st Tunnel*, *2nd Tunnel*, *3rd Tunnel*, and *4th Tunnel*.

Both **policy-based** and **route-based** VPN approaches are supported—see the different configuration scenarios in Chapter 55.

IPv4 and IPv6 tunnels are supported (**dual stack**). You can transport IPv6 traffic through an IPv4 tunnel and vice versa. For different IPsec authentication scenarios, see Chapter 55.



Warning

- To encrypt data between the local and remote subnets, specify the appropriate values in the subnet fields on both routers. To encrypt only the data stream between the routers, leave the local and remote subnet fields blank.
- If you specify protocol and port information in the *Local Protocol/Port* field, the router will encapsulate only the packets matching those settings.
- For an optimal and secure setup, we recommend following the instructions on the [Security Recommendations](#) page of the *strongSwan* website.



Info

- Detailed information and more examples of IPsec tunnel configuration can be found in the application note *IPsec Tunnel* [7].
- The *FRR* Router App is an internet routing protocol suite for Advantech routers. It includes protocol daemons for BGP, IS-IS, LDP, OSPF, PIM, and RIP.

Policy-based vs. Route-based VPN

The router supports two VPN modes, selectable via the *Type* field on the IPsec configuration page. The key differences are summarized in the table below.

Feature	Policy-based	Route-based
Traffic selection	Subnet pairs defined in <i>Local Subnet</i> and <i>Remote Subnet</i> fields	Routing table entries
Virtual interface	None	<code>ipsecX</code> interface is created
Traffic inspection	Not possible on tunnel traffic	Possible using <code>tcpdump -i ipsecX</code>
Dynamic routing	Not supported	Supported (e.g., FRR/BGP, FRR/OSPF)
Multiple clients	Limited	Fully supported
Cisco FlexVPN	Not supported	Supported
Configuration complexity	Lower	Higher

Table 55: Policy-based vs. route-based IPsec comparison

In **policy-based** mode, the router encrypts traffic based on configured security policies defined by the subnet pairs in *Local Subnet* and *Remote Subnet*. No virtual interface is created — the kernel’s policy engine handles encapsulation transparently. This is the simpler approach and is suitable for most standard site-to-site VPN deployments.

In **route-based** mode, a virtual `ipsecX` interface is created for each tunnel. Traffic is routed into the tunnel using standard routing rules, which enables dynamic routing protocols and more flexible topologies. The available route-based scenarios are described in Section 55.

Info

When using policy-based mode, if neither *Local Subnet* nor *Remote Subnet* is configured, only router-to-router traffic is encrypted — no LAN-to-LAN traffic will pass through the tunnel.

Configuration Scenarios

The following scenarios describe the most common VPN topologies supported by Advantech routers. The examples use route-based mode, but — with the exception of scenarios 2 and 3 — they are equally applicable to policy-based mode.

1. Enabled Installing Routes

- Remote and local subnets are used as traffic selectors (routes).
- This results in the same outcome as a policy-based VPN.
- A benefit of this approach is the ability to inspect unencrypted traffic on the `ipsecX` interface using a tool like `tcpdump -i ipsecX`.
- Set *Install Routes* to *yes*.

2. Static Routes (route-based only)

- Routes are installed statically by an application as soon as the IPsec tunnel is established.
- An application like FRR/STATICD can be used for this purpose.
- Set *Install Routes* to *no*.

3. Dynamic Routing (route-based only)

- Routes are installed dynamically by a routing protocol application, such as FRR/BGP or FRR/OSPF.
- Set *Install Routes* to *no*.

4. Multiple Clients

- This allows for a VPN network with multiple clients. One router acts as the server and assigns IP addresses to all clients.
- The server has *Remote Virtual Network* and *Remote Virtual Mask* configured, while clients use the *Local Virtual Address* setting.
- Set *Install Routes* to *yes*.

IPsec Authentication Scenarios

Four basic authentication options are supported:

1. Pre-shared Key

- Set *Authenticate Mode* to *pre-shared key*.
- Enter the shared key into the *Pre-shared Key* field.

2. Public Key

- Set *Authenticate Mode* to *X.509 certificate*.
- Enter the public key into the *Local Certificate / PubKey* field.
- A CA certificate is not required.

3. Peer Certificate

- Set *Authenticate Mode* to *X.509 certificate*.
- Enter the remote key into the *Remote Certificate / PubKey* field. Users with this certificate will be allowed.
- A CA certificate is not required.

4. CA Certificate

- Set *Authenticate Mode* to *X.509 certificate*.
- Enter the CA certificate(s) into the *CA Certificate* field. Any certificate signed by the specified CA will be accepted.
- The remote certificate itself is not required.

Notes:

- The Peer and CA Certificate modes can be used simultaneously; authentication can be performed by either method.
- The *Local ID* is significant. When using certificate authentication, the IKE identity must be contained in the certificate, either as its subject or as a `subjectAltName`.

Configuration Items

The IPsec configuration GUI is shown in Figure 60, and all items are described in the tables below.

1st IPsec Tunnel Configuration			
☐ Create 1st IPsec tunnel			
Description *			
Type	policy-based ▼		
Host IP Mode	IPv4 ▼		
1st Remote IP Address *			
2nd Remote IP Address *			
Tunnel IP Mode	IPv4 ▼		
Local ID *			
Remote ID *			
Local Protocol/Port *	e.g. udp, tcp/22 or udp/65000-65009		
Remote Protocol/Port *	e.g. udp, tcp/22 or udp/65000-65009		
Install Routes	yes ▼		
Separate Child SA for Each Subnet	☐		
Local Subnet *	Local Subnet Mask	Remote Subnet *	Remote Subnet Mask
1			
2			
Maximum 10 items			
MTU	1426	bytes	1280-1443 bytes
Remote Virtual Network *			
Remote Virtual Mask *			
Local Virtual Address *			
Cisco FlexVPN **	no ▼		
Encapsulation Mode	tunnel ▼		
Force NAT Traversal	no ▼		
IKE Protocol	IKEv1 ▼		
IKE Mode	main ▼		
IKE Algorithm	auto ▼		
IKE Encryption	3DES ▼		
IKE Hash	MD5 ▼		
IKE DH Group	2 (modp1024) ▼		
IKE Reauthentication	yes ▼		
XAUTH Enabled	no ▼		
XAUTH Mode	client ▼		
XAUTH Username			
XAUTH Password			

Figure 60: IPsec tunnels configuration page – part 1

ESP Algorithm	auto ▼		
ESP Encryption	DES ▼		
ESP Hash	MD5 ▼		
PFS	disabled ▼		
PFS DH Group	2 (modp1024) ▼		
Key Lifetime	3600	sec	1-86400 sec
IKE Lifetime	3600	sec	1-86400 sec
Lifetime Margin	540	sec	1-86400 sec
Lifetime Fuzz	100	%	0-200%
DPD Delay *		sec	1-3600 sec
DPD Timeout *		sec	1-3600 sec
Authenticate Mode	pre-shared key ▼		
Pre-shared Key			
Remote Pre-shared Key *			
CA Certificate *	 Choose File No file chosen		
Remote Certificate / PubKey *	 Choose File No file chosen		
Local Certificate / PubKey	 Choose File No file chosen		
Local Private Key	 Choose File No file chosen		
Local Passphrase *			
Revocation Check	if possible ▼		
User's Up Script	<pre>#!/bin/sh # # This script will be executed when IPsec tunnel is up.</pre> Load From File...		
User's Down Script	<pre>#!/bin/sh # # This script will be executed when IPsec tunnel is down.</pre> Load From File...		
Debug **	control ▼		

Figure 61: IPsec tunnels configuration page – part 2

Item	Description
<i>Description</i>	A user-defined name or description for the tunnel.
<i>Type</i>	• policy-based – Standard VPN approach based on security policies. • route-based – VPN approach based on routing rules. Data throughput may be slightly lower compared to policy-based VPN.
<i>Host IP Mode</i>	• IPv4 – The router communicates with the remote peer using IPv4. • IPv6 – The router communicates with the remote peer using IPv6.
<i>1st Remote IP Address</i>	The primary IPv4, IPv6 address, or domain name of the remote peer, corresponding to the selected <i>Host IP Mode</i> .
<i>2nd Remote IP Address</i>	The secondary (failover) IPv4 or IPv6 address, or domain name, of the remote peer. If configured, failover works as follows: at startup, the router initiates a connection to the <i>1st Remote IP Address</i> . If that connection fails, the router attempts to connect to the <i>2nd Remote IP Address</i> . Once the secondary connection is established, the router continues to use it until it fails — it does not automatically switch back to the primary address while the secondary connection is active.
<i>Tunnel IP Mode</i>	• IPv4 – IPv4 traffic is transported inside the tunnel. • IPv6 – IPv6 traffic is transported inside the tunnel.
<i>Local ID</i>	The identifier (ID) for the local side of the tunnel, typically composed of a hostname and a domain name (e.g., <code>router@mycompany.com</code>).
<i>Remote ID</i>	The identifier (ID) for the remote side of the tunnel.
<i>Local Protocol/Port</i>	Narrows the traffic selector by specifying the protocol and port for the local network. The format is <i>protocol/port</i> (e.g., <code>17/1701</code> for UDP port 1701).
<i>Remote Protocol/Port</i>	Narrows the traffic selector by specifying the protocol and port for the remote network.
<i>Install Routes</i>	For route-based mode only. If set to yes , the router automatically uses the traffic selectors to create and install routes.
<i>Separate Child SA for Each Subnet</i>	If enabled, a unique Child Security Association (SA) is created for each pair of local and remote subnets. This can improve interoperability with certain vendors and allow for more granular traffic policies. If disabled, a single Child SA covers all defined traffic selectors.
<i>Local Subnet</i>	The IPv4 or IPv6 address of the local network, based on the selected <i>Tunnel IP Mode</i> .
<i>Local Subnet Mask</i>	The IPv4 subnet mask or IPv6 prefix length (0–128) for the local network.
<i>Remote Subnet</i>	The IPv4 or IPv6 address of the network behind the remote peer.
<i>Remote Subnet Mask</i>	The IPv4 subnet mask or IPv6 prefix length for the remote network.
<i>MTU</i>	The Maximum Transmission Unit for the tunnel in route-based mode. The default value is 1426 bytes.
<i>Remote Virtual Network</i>	Specifies the virtual remote network for a server (responder).
<i>Remote Virtual Mask</i>	Specifies the virtual remote network mask for a server.
<i>Local Virtual Address</i>	Specifies the virtual local network address for a client. Use 0.0.0.0 to have an address assigned by the server.
<i>Cisco FlexVPN</i>	Enable to support Cisco FlexVPN functionality (route-based type only).
<i>Encapsulation Mode</i>	Specifies the IPsec encapsulation method: • tunnel – The entire IP datagram is encapsulated. • transport – Only the IP header is encapsulated (not supported for route-based VPN).
<i>Force NAT Traversal</i>	Enforces NAT traversal by enabling UDP encapsulation of ESP packets.

Table 56: IPsec tunnel configuration items description

Item	Description
<i>IKE Protocol</i>	Specifies the version of the Internet Key Exchange (IKE) protocol: IKEv1/IKEv2 (auto-negotiate), or explicitly IKEv1 or IKEv2 . When set to IKEv1/IKEv2, the router first attempts to negotiate using IKEv2. If the peer does not support IKEv2, the router automatically falls back to IKEv1. IKEv2 is strongly recommended whenever possible, as it provides improved security and enhanced functionality.
<i>IKE Mode</i>	Specifies the mode for establishing a connection: <i>main</i> or <i>aggressive</i> . It is strongly recommended not to use aggressive mode due to lower security.
<i>IKE Algorithm</i>	Specifies how algorithms are selected: • auto – Encryption and hash algorithms are selected automatically. • manual – Algorithms are defined by the user.
<i>IKE Encryption</i>	Available encryption algorithms: 3DES, AES128, AES192, AES256, AES128GCM128, AES192GCM128, AES256GCM128, CAMELLIA192, CAMELLIA256, CHACHA20POLY1305.
<i>IKE Hash</i>	Available hash algorithms: MD5, SHA1, SHA256, SHA384, SHA512.
<i>IKE DH Group</i>	Selects the Diffie-Hellman (DH) group, which determines the strength of the key used in the key exchange process. The choice of group is a trade-off between security and performance, as stronger groups require more computation. For detailed guidance on selecting an appropriate group, please refer to the official Algorithm Proposals (Cipher Suites) .
<i>IKE Reauthentication</i>	Enable or disable IKE reauthentication (for IKEv2 only).
<i>XAUTH Enabled</i>	Enable eXtended Authentication (for IKEv1 only).
<i>XAUTH Mode</i>	Select the XAUTH mode: <i>client</i> or <i>server</i> .
<i>XAUTH Username</i>	The username for XAUTH.
<i>XAUTH Password</i>	The password for XAUTH.
<i>ESP Algorithm</i>	Specifies how algorithms are selected: • auto – Encryption and hash algorithms are selected automatically. • manual – Algorithms are defined by the user.
<i>ESP Encryption</i>	Available encryption algorithms: DES, 3DES, AES128, AES192, AES256, AES128GCM128, AES192GCM128, AES256GCM128, CAMELLIA192, CAMELLIA256, CHACHA20POLY1305.
<i>ESP Hash</i>	Available hash algorithms: MD5, SHA1, SHA256, SHA384, SHA512.
<i>PFS</i>	Enables or disables Perfect Forward Secrecy, which ensures that session keys are not compromised if one of the long-term private keys is compromised.
<i>PFS DH Group</i>	Specifies the Diffie-Hellman group for PFS (see <i>IKE DH Group</i>).
<i>Key Lifetime</i>	Specifies the maximum interval after which a new set of encryption keys is automatically negotiated. The typical value is a few hours. The connection remains uninterrupted.
<i>IKE Lifetime</i>	Specifies the time period after which the router must re-authenticate the connection. The typical value ranges from a few hours to several days and must be greater than <i>Key Lifetime</i> . The entire connection is re-established, and a brief interruption may occur.
<i>Lifetime Margin</i>	Specifies how long before <i>Key Lifetime</i> or <i>IKE Lifetime</i> expires the router should initiate rekeying or reauthentication, to ensure the process completes within the lifetime interval. This value should be less than half of <i>Key Lifetime</i> and <i>IKE Lifetime</i> .

Table 56: IPsec tunnel configuration items description (continued)

Item	Description
<i>Lifetime Fuzz</i>	Specifies a percentage used to calculate a random time offset added to <i>Life-time Margin</i> . This introduces random variation in each rekeying and reauthentication cycle to prevent multiple devices from synchronizing their requests.
<i>DPD Delay</i>	Time after which the IPsec tunnel functionality is tested.
<i>DPD Timeout</i>	The period the router waits for a DPD response before considering the peer to be down.
<i>Authenticate Mode</i>	Specifies the authentication method: • Pre-shared key – Use a shared secret for both sides. • X.509 Certificate – Use X.509 certificates for authentication.
<i>Pre-shared Key</i>	The shared secret for both sides of the tunnel (for IKEv2, this is the local key). This field appears only when pre-shared key mode is selected.
<i>Remote Pre-shared Key</i>	The shared secret for the remote side (for IKEv2). Appears only when pre-shared key mode is selected.
<i>CA Certificate</i>	The CA certificate or chain used for X.509 authentication to validate the remote peer's certificate.
<i>Remote Certificate / PubKey</i>	The remote peer's X.509 certificate or public key for signature-based authentication.
<i>Local Certificate / PubKey</i>	The local router's X.509 certificate or public key.
<i>Local Private Key</i>	The private key corresponding to the local certificate.
<i>Local Passphrase</i>	The passphrase used during private key generation.
<i>Revocation Check</i>	Certificate revocation policy: • if possible – Fails only if a certificate is known to be revoked. • if URI defined – Fails if a CRL/OCSP URI is available, but revocation checking fails. • always – Fails if no revocation information is available (certificate is not known to be unrevoked).
<i>User's Up Script¹</i>	A custom script executed when the IPsec tunnel is established.
<i>User's Down Script¹</i>	A custom script executed when the IPsec tunnel is closed.
<i>Debug</i>	Controls the level of logging verbosity: • silent – No logging. • audit – Logs only successful connections and disconnections. • control – Default level, logs normal messages and errors. • control-more – More verbose control messages. • raw – Logs raw protocol messages. • private – Most verbose level, including private keys. See the Logger Configuration page on the <i>strongSwan</i> website for details.

Table 56: IPsec tunnel configuration items description (continued)

We recommend retaining the default settings. Increasing key lifetimes reduces operational costs but also decreases security. Conversely, shorter lifetimes increase security but may affect performance. Changes are applied after clicking the *Apply* button.

¹Parameters passed to the script: for policy-based, the connection name (e.g., `ipsec1-1`); for route-based, the connection name and interface name (e.g., `ipsec1-1` and `ipsec0`).

Important Considerations

Warning

- If local and remote subnets are not configured, only router-to-router traffic is encrypted.
- If protocol/port fields are configured, only traffic matching those settings is encapsulated.

IPsec Tunnel Configuration Example

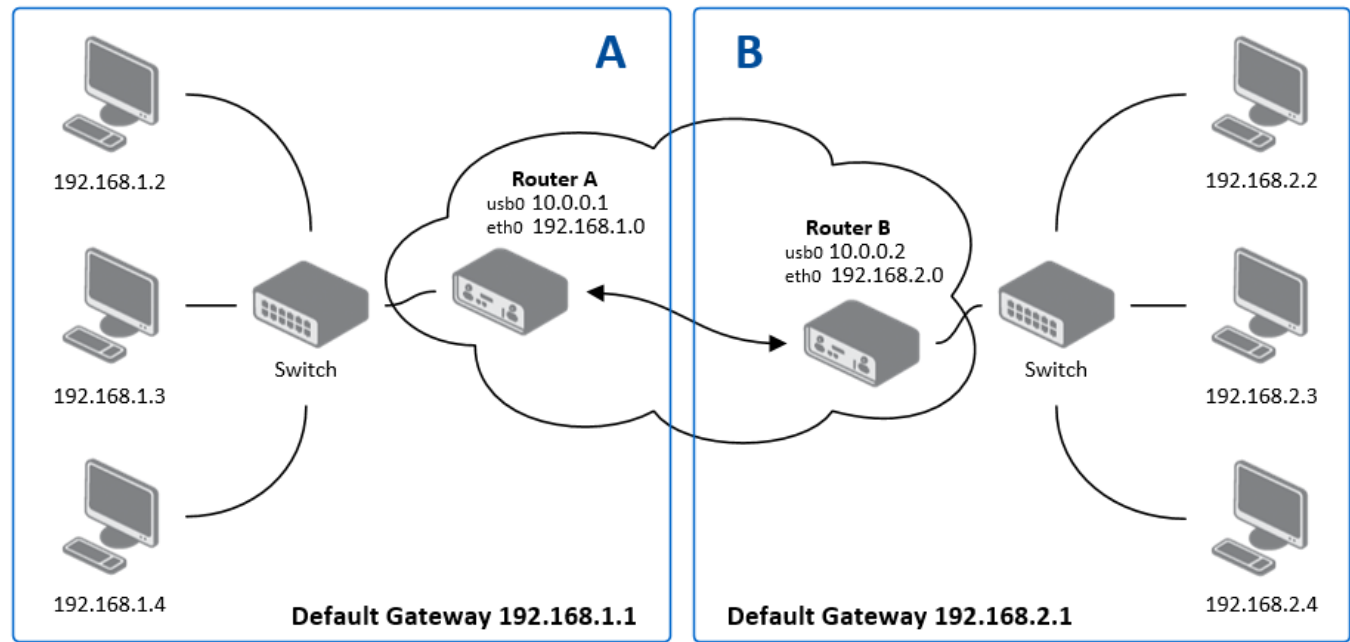


Figure 62: IPsec configuration topology example

Example configurations for Router A and Router B:

Configuration	Router A	Router B
Host IP Mode	IPv4	IPv4
1st Remote IP Address	10.0.0.2	10.0.0.1
Tunnel IP Mode	IPv4	IPv4
Remote Subnet	192.168.2.0	192.168.1.0
Remote Subnet Mask	255.255.255.0	255.255.255.0
Local Subnet	192.168.1.0	192.168.2.0
Local Subnet Mask	255.255.255.0	255.255.255.0
Authenticate Mode	pre-shared key	pre-shared key
Pre-shared Key	test	test

Table 57: Simple IPv4 IPsec tunnel configuration

3.13 WireGuard

WireGuard is a modern, high-performance VPN protocol known for its simplicity, strong encryption, and small attack surface. It creates secure, encrypted tunnels by encapsulating network traffic within UDP packets. Advantech routers support up to four simultaneous WireGuard tunnels, each with dual-stack (IPv4/IPv6) capabilities.

The configuration pages are located under *Configuration* → *WireGuard*, with separate tabs for each of the four possible tunnels.

1st WireGuard Tunnel Configuration	
☐ Create 1st WireGuard tunnel	
Description *	
Host IP Mode	IPv4 ▼
Remote IP Address *	
Remote Port *	
Local Port	51820
MTU *	bytes 128-16384 bytes
NAT/Firewall Traversal	no ▼
Interface IPv4 Address *	
Interface IPv4 Prefix Length *	
Interface IPv6 Address *	
Interface IPv6 Prefix Length *	
Install Routes	yes ▼
Traffic Selector	subnets ▼
Remote Subnets *	 Maximum 32 items
Pre-shared Key *	Generate
Local Private Key	Generate
Local Public Key *	
Remote Public Key	
* can be blank Apply	

Figure 63: WireGuard tunnel configuration page

Info

- For dynamic routing over WireGuard, the [FRR](#) Router App can be installed. This enables the use of standard routing protocols like BGP or OSPF across the tunnel.
- For detailed setup instructions and examples, refer to the [WireGuard Tunnel](#) Application Note, available on the Advantech documentation portal.

Tunnel Configuration

The following tables describe the parameters for configuring a WireGuard tunnel.

Item	Description
<i>Create WireGuard tunnel</i>	Enables and activates the respective tunnel.
<i>Description</i>	A user-defined name for the tunnel interface.
<i>Host IP Mode</i>	Sets the IP version for communication with the remote peer (<i>IPv4</i> or <i>IPv6</i>).
<i>Remote IP Address</i>	The public IPv4/IPv6 address or domain name of the remote peer.
<i>Remote/Local Port</i>	The UDP ports used for sending and receiving tunnel traffic. The default is 51820.
<i>MTU</i>	The Maximum Transmission Unit for the tunnel interface. If left blank, the kernel selects the MTU automatically; setting it to 1400 bytes is recommended.
<i>NAT/Firewall Traversal</i>	When set to <i>yes</i> , sends periodic keepalive packets to maintain a connection through a NAT device or firewall.
<i>Interface IPv4/IPv6 Address</i>	The virtual IPv4 or IPv6 address for the router's end of the tunnel.
<i>Interface IPv4/IPv6 Prefix Length</i>	The subnet prefix length for the tunnel interface address.
<i>Install Routes</i>	Available options: • yes: Automatically installs routes based on the <i>Traffic Selector</i> and <i>Remote Subnets</i>. • no: Disables automatic route installation, typically used when a dynamic routing protocol like BGP is managing routes.
<i>Traffic Selector</i>	Defines which traffic is sent through the tunnel: • all traffic: Routes all outbound traffic through the tunnel (creates a 0.0.0.0/0 or ::/0 route). • subnets: Routes only traffic destined for the networks specified in the <i>Remote Subnets</i> field.
<i>Remote Subnets</i>	A list of remote IPv4 or IPv6 subnets in CIDR notation (e.g., 192.168.1.0/24) to be routed through the tunnel. Up to 32 subnets can be defined.

Table 58: WireGuard tunnel configuration options

Cryptographic Keys

WireGuard's security is based on modern public-key cryptography.

Item	Description
<i>Local Private Key</i>	The secret private key for this router. Click <i>Generate</i> to create a new one. This key must never be shared.
<i>Local Public Key</i>	The public key derived from the local private key. This key is shared with the remote peer so it can authenticate and encrypt traffic sent to this router.
<i>Remote Public Key</i>	The public key of the remote peer. This is used to authenticate the remote peer and encrypt traffic sent to it.
<i>Pre-shared Key</i>	An optional key for an additional layer of symmetric-key encryption, providing post-quantum resistance. Click <i>Generate</i> to create a new key and share it with the remote peer.

Table 59: Cryptographic key configuration

Configuration Example

This example details a site-to-site WireGuard tunnel between Router A and Router B. Router B acts as the "server" by listening for connections, while Router A initiates the connection.

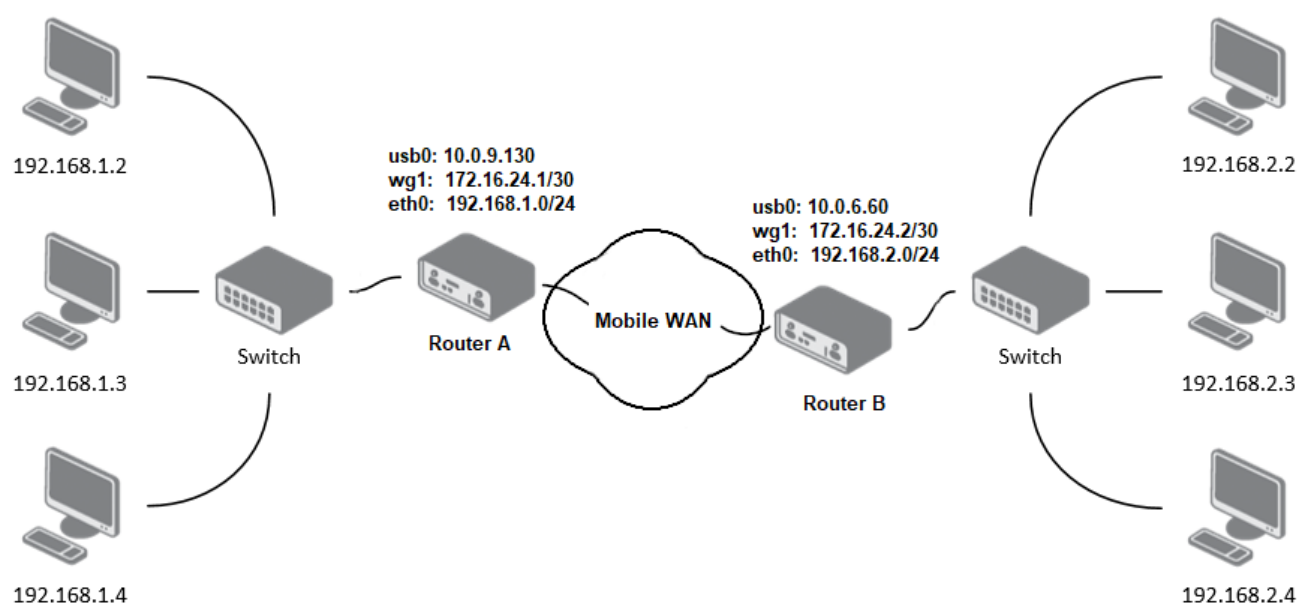


Figure 64: An example of WireGuard topology

The following table outlines the necessary configuration for each router based on the topology above.

Item	Router A Value	Router B Value
Host IP Mode	IPv4	IPv4
Remote IP Address	10.0.6.60	– (Listens on all interfaces)
Remote Port	51820	– (Listens on local port)
Local Port	51820	51820
NAT/Firewall Traversal	yes	no
Interface IPv4 Address	172.16.24.1	172.16.24.2
Interface IPv4 Prefix Length	30	30
Install Routes	yes	yes
Traffic Selector	subnets	subnets
Remote Subnets	192.168.2.0/24	192.168.1.0/24
Local Private Key	<Generated Key A>	<Generated Key B>
Local Public Key	<Public Key A>	<Public Key B>
Remote Public Key	<Public Key B>	<Public Key A>

Table 60: WireGuard IPv4 tunnel configuration example

Verifying Connectivity

After applying the configuration, the tunnel status can be verified on the *Status* → *WireGuard* page. A successful connection is indicated by the presence of a *Latest handshake* time, which shows how long ago the last cryptographic key exchange occurred. This value will only appear after traffic has been initiated from the client side (Router A) or after the first keepalive packet has been sent.

1st WireGuard Tunnel Information						
<pre> interface: wg1 public key: jY1VmPwwlmzoC3y6xUX7dbXeDfvrRJxL42f4xOA4FkA= private key: (hidden) listening port: 51820 peer: 3/L9L9REE6BM1zO3CgET4r2N3QPKPTK/9yAj1hOq0n4= endpoint: 10.0.6.60:51820 allowed ips: 172.16.24.0/30, 192.168.2.0/24 latest handshake: 1 minute, 17 seconds ago transfer: 644 B received, 2.26 KiB sent persistent keepalive: every 25 seconds </pre>						
Route Table						
Destination	Gateway	Genmask	Flags	Metric	Ref	Use Iface
0.0.0.0	192.168.253.254	0.0.0.0	UG	0	0	0 usb0
172.16.24.0	0.0.0.0	255.255.255.252	U	0	0	0 wg1
192.168.2.0	0.0.0.0	255.255.255.0	U	0	0	0 wg1
192.168.7.0	0.0.0.0	255.255.255.0	U	0	0	0 eth1
192.168.11.0	0.0.0.0	255.255.255.0	U	0	0	0 eth0
192.168.253.254	0.0.0.0	255.255.255.255	UH	0	0	0 usb0

Figure 65: Router A: WireGuard status and route table

1st WireGuard Tunnel Information						
<pre> interface: wg1 public key: 3/L9L9REE6BM1zO3CgET4r2N3QPKPTK/9yAj1hOq0n4= private key: (hidden) listening port: 51820 peer: jY1VmPwwlmzoC3y6xUX7dbXeDfvrRJxL42f4xOA4FkA= endpoint: 10.0.9.130:51820 allowed ips: 172.16.24.0/30, 192.168.1.0/24 latest handshake: 1 minute, 22 seconds ago transfer: 2.59 KiB received, 736 B sent </pre>						
Route Table						
Destination	Gateway	Genmask	Flags	Metric	Ref	Use Iface
0.0.0.0	192.168.253.254	0.0.0.0	UG	0	0	0 usb0
10.1.0.0	0.0.0.0	255.255.255.0	U	0	0	0 eth2
172.16.24.0	0.0.0.0	255.255.255.252	U	0	0	0 wg1
192.168.1.0	0.0.0.0	255.255.255.0	U	0	0	0 wg1
192.168.7.0	0.0.0.0	255.255.255.0	U	0	0	0 eth1
192.168.100.0	0.0.0.0	255.255.255.0	U	0	0	0 eth0
192.168.253.254	0.0.0.0	255.255.255.255	UH	0	0	0 usb0

Figure 66: Router B: WireGuard status and route table

3.14 VXLAN

Info

VXLAN does not provide any native encryption or authentication. When deploying VXLAN over public or untrusted networks, it is strongly recommended to route the VXLAN traffic through a secure VPN tunnel, such as *IPsec* or *WireGuard*, to ensure data confidentiality and integrity.

Virtual Extensible LAN (VXLAN) is a Layer 2 overlay scheme on a Layer 3 network. It uses a VLAN-like encapsulation to wrap Layer 2 Ethernet frames within Layer 3 UDP packets. This allows for the creation of virtualized Layer 2 subnets that can span across physical Layer 3 network boundaries. Advantech routers support up to four simultaneous VXLAN tunnels. The configuration pages for VXLAN are located under *Configuration* → *VXLAN*.

1st VXLAN Configuration

☐ Create 1st VXLAN connection

Local Address

Remote Address

VNI 1-16777215

MTU * 576-1500 bytes

Port

Bridged yes ▼

IPv4

IP Address

Subnet Mask / Prefix

MAC Address *

IPv6

* can be blank

Figure 67: VXLAN configuration page

The table below describes the parameters available for configuring each of the VXLAN interfaces.

Item	Description
<i>Create VXLAN connection</i>	Activates the selected VXLAN tunnel (1st to 4th).
<i>Local Address</i>	The local IP address of the router used as the source for the VXLAN tunnel.
<i>Remote Address</i>	The IP address of the remote tunnel peer (VTEP). For secure deployments, this should be the internal IP of an established VPN tunnel.
<i>VNI</i>	VXLAN Network Identifier (1 to 16777215). This ID must be identical on both VTEP peers.
<i>MTU</i>	Maximum Transmission Unit (576 to 1500 bytes). The recommended value is 1450 to account for the 50-byte VXLAN overhead and prevent fragmentation. This field can be left blank.
<i>Port</i>	The destination UDP port used for the outer header. The standard port is 4789.

Table 61: VXLAN configuration parameters

Item	Description
<i>Bridged</i>	Select <i>yes</i> to add the VXLAN interface to the router's local bridge, enabling seamless Layer 2 connectivity. If set to <i>no</i> , the VXLAN is considered "Routed" and has its own IP address.
<i>IP Address</i>	The IPv4 or IPv6 address assigned to the VXLAN interface. This is configured when <i>Bridged</i> is set to <i>no</i> (Routed mode).
<i>Subnet Mask / Prefix</i>	The corresponding IPv4 subnet mask or IPv6 prefix length for the assigned IP address.
<i>MAC Address</i>	A custom MAC address for the VXLAN interface. If specified, the address must be unicast and locally administered. This field is optional and can be left blank.

Table 61: VXLAN configuration parameters (continued)

Deployment Example

In this scenario, two routers bridge their local networks over an existing *WireGuard* tunnel to ensure security. The *Bridged* option is enabled to allow Layer 2 traffic (such as broadcast or non-IP protocols) to pass transparently through the secure tunnel.

Setting	Router A (Site 1)	Router B (Site 2)
<i>Local Address</i>	10.0.0.1 (VPN IP)	10.0.0.2 (VPN IP)
<i>Remote Address</i>	10.0.0.2 (VPN IP)	10.0.0.1 (VPN IP)
<i>VNI</i>	100	100
<i>Port</i>	4789	4789
<i>Bridged</i>	<i>yes</i>	<i>yes</i>

Table 62: Example of secure VXLAN bridge over VPN

Security Recommendations

To protect your network when using VXLAN, follow these best practices:

- **Use VPN Transport:** Never expose unencrypted VXLAN traffic directly to the internet. Always encapsulate it within *IPsec* or *WireGuard*.
- **Firewall Whitelisting:** Configure the firewall under *Configuration* → *Firewall* to allow incoming traffic on UDP port `4789` only from the trusted peer IP address.
- **MTU Adjustment:** Ensure the MTU is correctly set (e.g., `1450`) to avoid packet fragmentation issues caused by the combination of VPN and VXLAN headers.

3.15 GRE

Generic Routing Encapsulation (GRE) is a tunneling protocol that can encapsulate a wide variety of network layer protocols inside virtual point-to-point links over an IP network. It is a simple and effective way to create unencrypted tunnels between two separate LANs. The router supports the creation of up to four GRE tunnels.

The configuration pages are located under *Configuration* → *GRE*, with separate tabs for each of the four tunnels.

Figure 68: GRE tunnel configuration page

Warning

GRE is an unencrypted protocol and does not support IPv6 transport. For secure communication, it is recommended to use it in combination with IPsec.

Tunnel Configuration

The following table describes the parameters for configuring a GRE tunnel.

Item	Description
<i>Description</i>	An optional name or description for the tunnel.
<i>Remote IP Address</i>	The public IP address of the remote tunnel endpoint.
<i>Local IP Address</i>	The public IP address of the local tunnel endpoint.
<i>Remote Subnet</i>	The IP address of the destination network behind the remote endpoint.
<i>Remote Subnet Mask</i>	The subnet mask of the remote network.
<i>Local Interface IP Address</i>	The virtual IP address of the local end of the GRE tunnel interface.
<i>Remote Interface IP Address</i>	The virtual IP address of the remote end of the GRE tunnel interface.

Table 63: GRE tunnel configuration options

Item	Description
Multicasts	Available options: disabled: Blocks multicast traffic from being sent through the tunnel. enabled: Allows multicast traffic to be sent through the tunnel.
Pre-shared Key	An optional 32-bit numerical key for basic packet validation. If a key is configured, both routers must use the same key, or packets will be dropped. This is not a cryptographic key and provides no security.

Table 63: GRE tunnel configuration options (continued)

Warning

GRE tunnels cannot pass through a Network Address Translation (NAT) device without a corresponding NAT traversal solution, such as a port forwarding rule for protocol 47 (GRE).

Configuration Example

This example shows a basic site-to-site GRE tunnel between Router A and Router B, connecting their respective LANs.

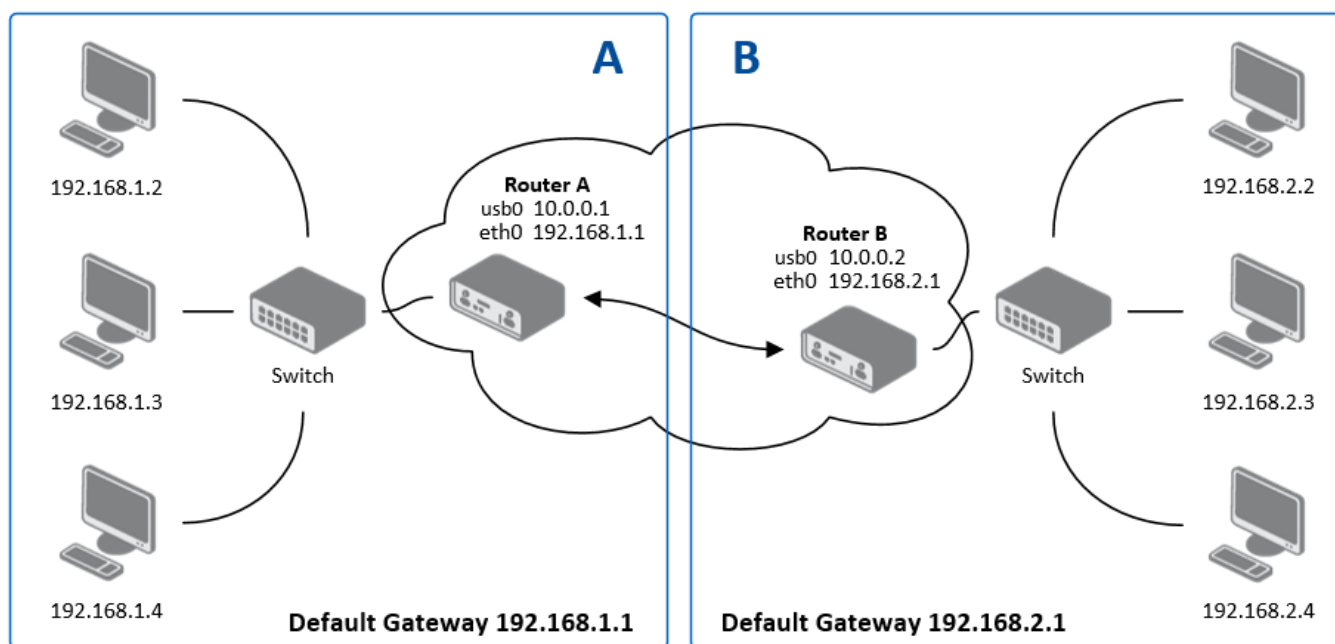


Figure 69: An example of GRE topology

The following table outlines the key parameters for this configuration.

Parameter	Router A	Router B
Remote IP Address	10.0.0.2	10.0.0.1
Remote Subnet	192.168.2.0	192.168.1.0
Remote Subnet Mask	255.255.255.0	255.255.255.0

Table 64: GRE tunnel configuration example

Info

For more detailed examples, please refer to the *GRE Tunnel Application Note* [8].

3.16 L2TP

Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol (L2TP) is a tunneling protocol used to support virtual private networks (VPNs) or as part of the delivery of services by ISPs. It does not provide any encryption itself; it relies on an encryption protocol that it passes within the tunnel to provide privacy.

The L2TP configuration page is located under *Configuration* → *L2TP*.

L2TP Tunnel Configuration

☐ Create L2TP tunnel

Mode

L2TP client ▼

Server IP Address

Client Start IP Address

Client End IP Address

Local IP Address *

Remote IP Address *

Remote Subnet *

Remote Subnet Mask *

MRU

1400

bytes

128-16384 bytes

MTU

1400

bytes

128-16384 bytes

Username

Password

👁

* can be blank

Figure 70: L2TP tunnel configuration page

Warning

L2TP is an unencrypted protocol and does not support IPv6 transport. For secure communication, it must be combined with a security protocol like IPsec.

Tunnel Configuration

To set up an L2TP tunnel, check the *Create L2TP tunnel* box and configure the following parameters.

Item	Description
Mode	Determines the router's role in the L2TP connection: • L2TP server: The router acts as the L2TP Network Server (LNS), accepting connections from clients. • L2TP client: The router acts as the L2TP Access Concentrator (LAC), initiating a connection to a remote server.
Server IP Address	(Client mode only) The IP address of the remote L2TP server.
Client Start/End IP Address	(Server mode only) Defines the starting and ending addresses of the IP pool from which the server will assign addresses to connecting clients.

Table 65: L2TP tunnel configuration options

Item	Description
Local IP Address	The virtual IP address of the local end of the L2TP tunnel.
Remote IP Address	The virtual IP address of the remote end of the L2TP tunnel.
Remote Subnet/Mask	The IP address and subnet mask of the network behind the remote peer, used for creating a static route.
MRU/MTU	The Maximum Receive Unit and Maximum Transmission Unit in bytes. The default value is 1400.
Username/Password	The credentials used for authenticating the L2TP session.

Table 65: L2TP tunnel configuration options (continued)

Configuration Example

This example shows a typical client-server setup, where Router A (Server) provides access to its LAN for Router B (Client).

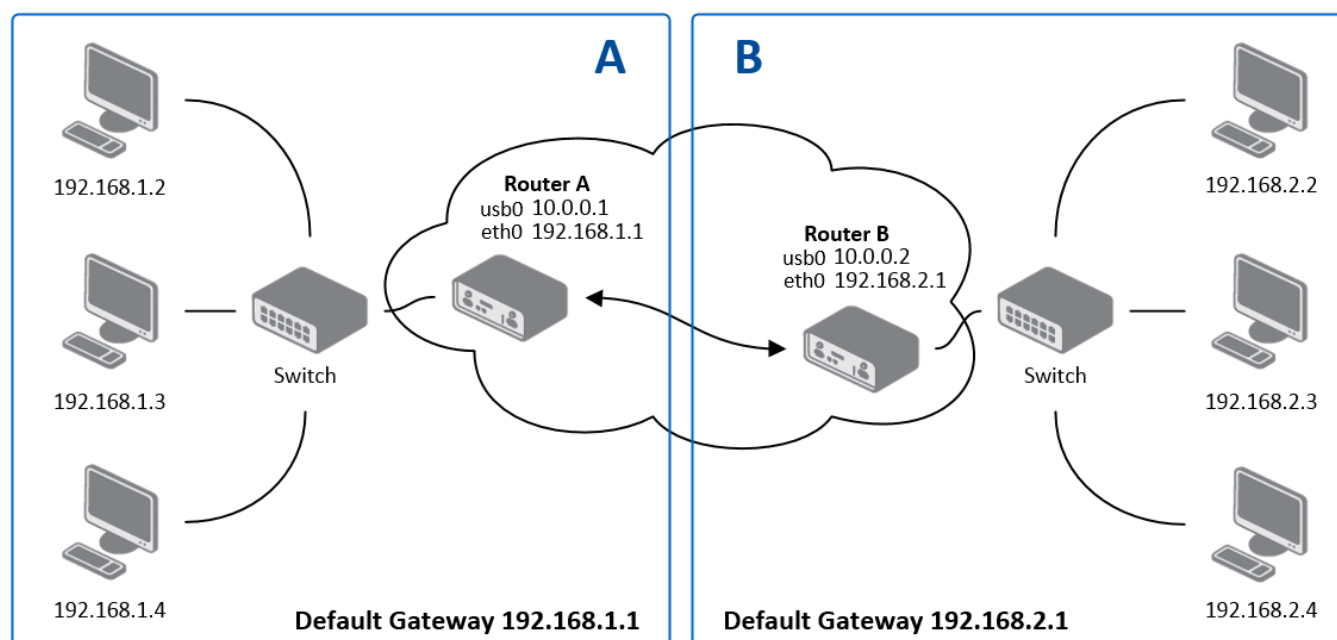


Figure 71: An example of L2TP topology

The configuration for each router is detailed below.

Parameter	Router A (Server)	Router B (Client)
Mode	L2TP Server	L2TP Client
Server IP Address	—	10.0.0.1
Client Start IP Address	192.168.2.5	—
Client End IP Address	192.168.2.254	—
Local IP Address	192.168.1.1	—
Remote Subnet	192.168.2.0	192.168.1.0
Remote Subnet Mask	255.255.255.0	255.255.255.0
Username	username	username
Password	password	password

Table 66: L2TP tunnel configuration example

3.17 PPTP

Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol (PPTP) is a tunneling protocol used to create simple, password-protected connections between two LANs. To configure a tunnel, navigate to the *Configuration* → *PPTP* page.

PPTP Tunnel Configuration

☐ Create PPTP tunnel

Mode

PPTP client

Server IP Address

Local IP Address

Remote IP Address

Remote Subnet *

Remote Subnet Mask *

MRU

1460

bytes

128-16384 bytes

MTU

1460

bytes

128-16384 bytes

Username

Password

* can be blank

Apply

Figure 72: PPTP tunnel configuration page



Warning

PPTP is an outdated and insecure protocol with known vulnerabilities. It does not support IPv6. It is strongly recommended to use a modern, secure VPN protocol such as WireGuard or OpenVPN instead.

Tunnel Configuration

To set up a PPTP tunnel, check the *Create PPTP tunnel* box and configure the following parameters.

Item	Description
Mode	Determines the router’s role in the PPTP connection: PPTP server: The router acts as the server, accepting connections from remote clients. PPTP client: The router acts as the client, initiating a connection to a remote server.
Server IP Address	(Client mode only) The IP address of the remote PPTP server.
Local IP Address	The virtual IP address for the local end of the tunnel.
Remote IP Address	The virtual IP address for the remote end of the tunnel.
Remote Subnet/Mask	The IP address and subnet mask of the network behind the remote peer.

Table 67: PPTP tunnel configuration options

Item	Description
MRU/MTU	The Maximum Receive Unit and Maximum Transmission Unit in bytes. The default value is 1460 to avoid packet fragmentation.
Username/Password	The credentials for authenticating the PPTP session.

Table 67: PPTP tunnel configuration options (continued)

Info

The router firmware also supports PPTP passthrough, which allows PPTP client devices on the LAN to establish tunnels through the router to an external server.

Configuration Example

This example shows a standard client-server setup where Router A (Server) accepts a connection from Router B (Client).

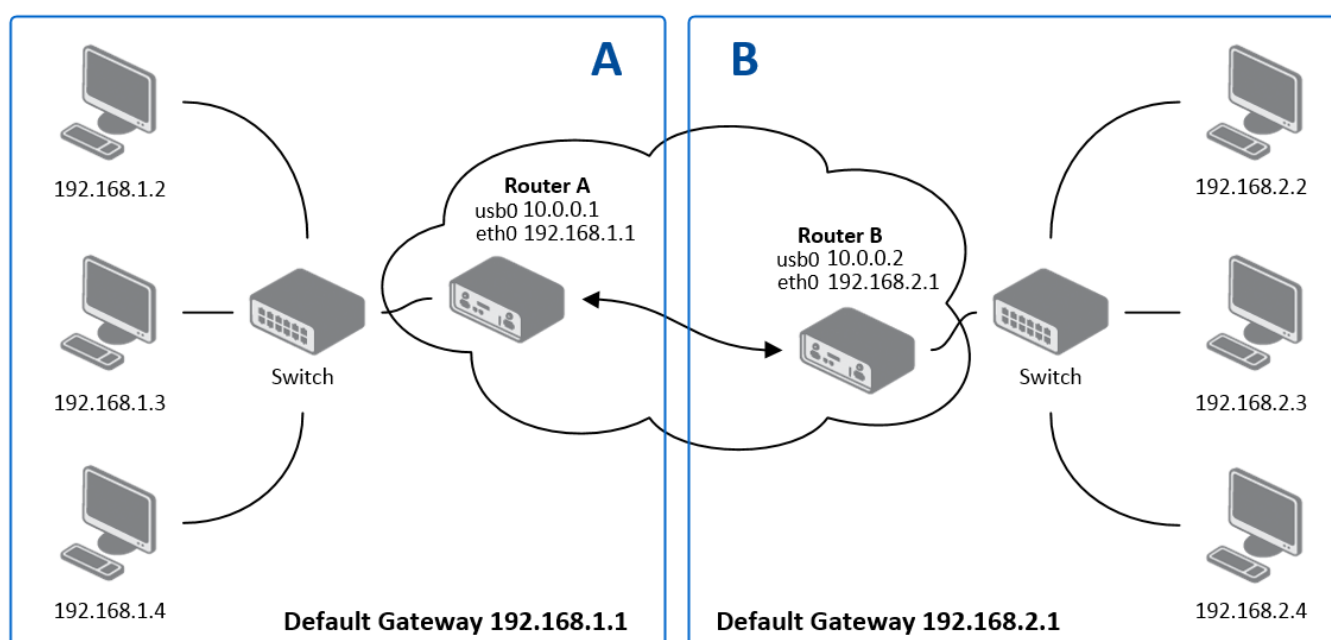


Figure 73: An example of PPTP topology

The configuration for each router is outlined below.

Parameter	Router A (Server)	Router B (Client)
Mode	PPTP Server	PPTP Client
Server IP Address	—	10.0.0.1
Local IP Address	192.168.1.1	—
Remote IP Address	192.168.2.1	—
Remote Subnet	192.168.2.0	192.168.1.0
Remote Subnet Mask	255.255.255.0	255.255.255.0
Username	username	username
Password	password	password

Table 68: PPTP tunnel configuration example

3.18 Services

3.18.1 Dynamic DNS

The Dynamic DNS client allows you to access the router using a fixed, memorable hostname, even if the router's IP address changes. The client monitors the router's public IP address and automatically updates the DNS record on a Dynamic DNS server whenever a change is detected. The service includes support for standard DDNS (RFC 2136) and secure updates via HTTPS. To configure the service, navigate to *Services* → *Dynamic DNS*.

Warning

For the Dynamic DNS service to function correctly, the router's SIM card must be assigned a public IP address by the mobile provider.

The table below describes the settings available on the *Dynamic DNS Configuration* page.

Setting	Description
Hostname	Your fully qualified domain name registered with a Dynamic DNS provider (e.g., <i>myrouter.example.com</i>).
IP Mode	Select the IP protocol version for the Dynamic DNS updates: • IPv4 – Use only the IPv4 address (default). • IPv6 – Use only the IPv6 address. • IPv4/IPv6 – Use both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses (dual-stack).
Service	Select the protocol used for the update. Options are DynDNS (HTTP API) for standard web-based providers or DDNS (RFC 2136) for direct updates to standard DNS servers.
Server	The update server address of your Dynamic DNS provider. If left blank, the default value <code>members.dyndns.org</code> is used. Several free services are available, including: freedns.afraid.org , www.duckdns.org , and www.noip.com . Secure HTTPS URLs are supported. Active only when <i>Service</i> is set to <i>DynDNS (HTTP API)</i> .
Username	The username for your Dynamic DNS service account. Active only when <i>Service</i> is set to <i>DynDNS (HTTP API)</i> .
Password	The password for your Dynamic DNS service account. Active only when <i>Service</i> is set to <i>DynDNS (HTTP API)</i> .
Skip Certificate Verification	Check this box to bypass SSL/TLS certificate validation when connecting to an HTTPS server. Active only when <i>Service</i> is set to <i>DynDNS (HTTP API)</i> .
CA Certificate	The Certificate Authority (CA) certificate used to verify the server's identity during HTTPS updates. Active only when <i>Service</i> is set to <i>DynDNS (HTTP API)</i> .
TTL	Time to Live for the DNS record, specifying how long the record is cached by DNS resolvers. The default value is <code>60</code> seconds, with an allowed range from <code>5</code> to <code>86400</code> seconds. Active only when <i>Service</i> is set to <i>DDNS (RFC 2136)</i> .
TSIG Key	The Transaction Signature (TSIG) key used to authenticate updates. Active only when <i>Service</i> is set to <i>DDNS (RFC 2136)</i> .

Table 69: Dynamic DNS configuration settings

Configuration Example

The example below demonstrates how to configure the router to securely update a dual-stack (IPv4 and IPv6) DNS record. In this scenario, the router updates the hostname *router.example.com* using a custom provider's secure HTTPS API. To ensure maximum security, SSL/TLS certificate verification is enforced (*Skip Certificate Verification* is unchecked). The content of a specific *CA Certificate* is pasted into the corresponding text area (or imported using the *Load From File* button) to authenticate the server.

Setting	Value
Hostname	router.example.com
IP Mode	IPv4/IPv6
Service	DynDNS (HTTP API)
Server	https://ddns.example.com
Username	admin_user
Password	<your_secure_password>
Skip Certificate Verification	unchecked
CA Certificate	<pasted PEM certificate content>

Table 70: Example of secure Dynamic DNS configuration

Info

To access the router's web interface from the internet, you must also enable Remote Access. For details, see Chapter [3.10 NAT](#).

3.18.2 FTP

Warning

FTP is an unencrypted protocol.

FTP protocol (File Transfer Protocol) can be used to transfer files between the router and another device on the computer network. Configuration form of TP server can be done in *FTP* configuration page under *Services* menu item.

Item	Description
<i>Enable FTP service</i>	Enabling of FTP server.
<i>Maximum Sessions</i>	Indicates how many concurrent connections shall the FTP server accept. Once the maximum is reached, additional connections will be rejected until some of the existing connections are terminated. The range is from 1 to 500.
<i>Session Timeout</i>	Is used to close inactive sessions. The server will terminate a FTP session after it has not been used for the given amount of seconds. The range is from 60 to 7200.

Table 71: FTP configuration items description

FTP Configuration			
☐ Enable FTP service			
Maximum Sessions	50		1-500
Session Timeout	600	sec	60-7200 sec
Apply			

Figure 74: Configuration of FTP server

3.18.3 GNSS

Info

- Available only for models equipped with a GNSS module.
- **Antenna Placement:** GNSS antennas require a direct line of sight to the satellites. Signal reception is generally not possible inside buildings or tunnels without specialized signal repeaters.
- **Active vs. Passive Antennas:** Active GNSS antennas require power to operate. If an active antenna is connected to a product that supports only passive antennas, no signal will be received.
- Starting from firmware version 6.6.0, this functionality replaces the functionality of the [GPS Router App](#). It is strongly recommended to use the built-in feature instead of the legacy Router App. Furthermore, it is not possible to use this functionality together with Router App versions earlier than 2.0.0.

The GNSS (Global Navigation Satellite System) page allows you to configure the router's satellite positioning features. When the GNSS service is enabled, the router activates its receiver to acquire satellite signals. This provides several key functionalities:

- Real-time location data becomes available on the router's status pages (see Chapter 3 and Chapter 3), as well as via the `status geoloc` and `status gnss` commands in the command-line interface.
- The router can use GNSS as a source for time synchronization (see Chapter 3.18.6 NTP).
- If configured, the router's location can be reported via SNMP for network management and monitoring (see Chapter 3.18.9 SNMP).
- The location data is also available to Router Apps, which can forward it over other channels, e.g., the *MQTT Manager*, *DNP3 Outstation*, or *Lwm2M Manager* Router Apps.

This service is essential for applications requiring precise time and location information, such as vehicle tracking, asset management, or synchronizing distributed network devices. The configuration also allows forwarding of raw NMEA data to both local serial ports and remote servers over the network.

Item	Description
<i>Enable GNSS service</i>	Enables or disables the GNSS functionality in the router. When enabled, the router starts acquiring GNSS data from the integrated receiver.
<i>Use Constellations</i>	Selects which satellite constellations the GNSS receiver uses. The GPS constellation is always enabled, while other constellations can be configured as follows depending on the device model: BB-SR303, BB-SR305: only GPS and Galileo are supported; individual selection is not available in the GUI. BB-SR304, BB-SR308, BB-SR309, BB-SR310: Galileo, GLONASS, and BeiDou can be enabled or disabled individually. Satellites from all used constellations are displayed on the GNSS status page (see Chapter 3).
<i>Forward NMEA to Local</i>	Select the local interface(s) to which the NMEA output from the GNSS receiver will be forwarded. Multiple output options are available: • RS-232 port • RS-485 port • serial converter in USB port • pseudoterminal The forwarded data uses fixed settings: 115200 baud, 8 data bits, no parity, 1 stop bit.

Table 72: GNSS configuration items description

Item	Description
<i>Forward NMEA to Remote</i>	Configure up to ten remote destinations, each defined by the following parameters: • Address – Destination IP address or hostname for NMEA forwarding • Protocol – Select TCP or UDP transport • Port: Destination port • Moving Period – Interval (in seconds) to send data when movement is detected • Halted Period – Interval (in seconds) to send data when the device is stationary Allowed interval is 0–864000 seconds. Ports default to 10110 (NMEA over TCP/UDP).
<i>Forward NMEA Sentences</i>	Select which specific NMEA sentence types (RMC, GGA, GNS, VTG, GSA, GSV) to forward. This allows filtering of the GNSS data sent to local or remote destinations. Proprietary (private) NMEA sentences are always filtered out and never forwarded.
<i>Send Router Identification</i>	A custom identification text (1–70 characters) sent to the remote destination as an additional NMEA sentence in the format \$GPFID,X. Leave the field blank to omit the ID.
<i>Restart when NMEA is unavailable</i>	If enabled, the GNSS service is automatically reset if no data is received for the duration specified in the <i>Unavailability Timeout</i> field.
<i>Unavailability Timeout</i>	Defines the maximum time without GNSS data (5–14,400 minutes) before the service is automatically reset.

Table 72: GNSS configuration items description (continued)

Info

Local forwarding is possible simultaneously to multiple hardware ports and one pseudoterminal. NMEA forwarding to remote supports both TCP and UDP and can be configured independently for up to ten remote servers.

GNSS Configuration																											
☒ Enable GNSS service																											
Use Constellations	☒ GPS ☒ GLONASS ☒ Galileo ☒ BeiDou																										
Forward NMEA to Local ☐ RS-232 port ☐ RS-485 port ☐ pseudoterminal <i>with fixed parameters 115200,8,N,1</i>																											
Forward NMEA to Remote <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Address</th> <th>Protocol</th> <th>Port</th> <th>Moving Period</th> <th>Halted Period</th> <th></th> <th></th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>☐ </td> <td>TCP ▼</td> <td>10110</td> <td>10</td> <td>10</td> <td>sec</td> <td>0-864000 sec</td> </tr> <tr> <td>☐ </td> <td>TCP ▼</td> <td>10110</td> <td>10</td> <td>10</td> <td>sec</td> <td>0-864000 sec</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> Maximum 10 items							Address	Protocol	Port	Moving Period	Halted Period			☐	TCP ▼	10110	10	10	sec	0-864000 sec	☐	TCP ▼	10110	10	10	sec	0-864000 sec
Address	Protocol	Port	Moving Period	Halted Period																							
☐	TCP ▼	10110	10	10	sec	0-864000 sec																					
☐	TCP ▼	10110	10	10	sec	0-864000 sec																					
Forward NMEA Sentences		☒ RMC ☒ GGA ☒ GNS ☒ VTG ☒ GSA ☒ GSV																									
Send Router Identification *			1-70 char																								
☐ Restart when NMEA is unavailable Unavailability Timeout 20 min 5-14400 min																											
* can be blank Apply																											

Figure 75: GNSS configuration page

3.18.4 HTTP



Warning

Make sure your certificate matches the *Security Level*. Increasing *Security Level* without generating a new certificate may lead to inability to connect to Web GUI: the page then displays the warning *The current HTTPS certificate is insufficient for the selected Security Level*, and a dialog offers to generate a new certificate after the settings are applied.

This page allows you to manage both HTTP and the secure HTTPS protocols. For maximum security, it is strongly recommended to use HTTPS, as it encrypts all communication between your browser and the router. The router allows you to toggle these services using the *Enable HTTP service* and *Enable HTTPS service* checkboxes. Note that even if the HTTP service is unchecked (disabled), the router will still listen on the standard HTTP port for the sole purpose of automatically redirecting any incoming requests to the secure HTTPS port.

HTTP Configuration

☐ Enable HTTP service

☒ Enable HTTPS service

Security Level

1 - Low

Minimum TLS Version

TLS 1.2

Session Timeout

600

sec

60-100000 sec

Login Banner

☒ Keep the current certificate

☐ Generate a new certificate

☐ Upload a new certificate

Certificate

Choose File

No file chosen

Private Key

Choose File

No file chosen

Apply

Figure 76: Web server configuration page

Item	Description
Enable HTTP service	Enables unencrypted access to the web interface. Not recommended.
Enable HTTPS service	Enables secure, encrypted access to the web interface. This is the default and recommended setting.

Table 73: Web server configuration items description

Item	Description
<i>Security Level</i> ¹	Sets the minimum cryptographic strength for the connection by controlling which TLS versions and cipher suites are permitted. Higher levels disable older, less secure algorithms. • 0 - Weak: Allows all cryptographic suites, including insecure legacy algorithms. This level is not recommended and should only be used for compatibility with outdated systems. • 1 - Low: [Default] Provides a baseline of 80-bit security. • 2 - Medium: Enforces a minimum of 112-bit security. • 3 - High: Enforces a minimum of 128-bit security (requires AES-128 or stronger). • 4 - Very High: Enforces a minimum of 192-bit security (requires AES-192 or stronger).
<i>Minimum TLS Version</i>	Defines the minimum version of the TLS protocol that the router's web server will accept for HTTPS connections. For maximum security, it is recommended to select the highest version compatible with your clients. The available options range from TLS 1.0 to TLS 1.3. Please note that the insecure TLS 1.0 and 1.1 versions are only available for selection if the <i>Security Level</i> is set to 0.
<i>Session Timeout</i>	Defines the period of inactivity (in minutes) after which a user is automatically logged out.
<i>Login Banner</i>	Displays custom text on the login page, directly above the username and password fields.
<i>Keep the current certificate</i>	Makes no changes to the certificate currently stored on the router.
<i>Generate a new certificate</i>	Generates a new self-signed certificate for the router, corresponding to the selected <i>Security Level</i>. Make sure your certificate matches the <i>Security Level</i>.
<i>Upload a new certificate</i>	Allows you to upload a custom certificate, such as one signed by a trusted Certificate Authority (CA).
<i>Certificate</i>	Use the file browser to select the PEM-formatted certificate file to upload. The file can contain a single certificate or a complete certificate chain.
<i>Private Key</i>	Use the file browser to select the private key file corresponding to the certificate being uploaded.

Table 73: Web server configuration items description (continued)

¹For detailed explanation see the *Security Guidelines* [15], specifically the chapter on *Cryptographic algorithms*.

3.18.5 LLDP

Info

Information about discovered neighbors can be viewed on the *Status* → *Network* page, under the *LLDP Neighbors* section.

The Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP) is a vendor-neutral, Layer 2 network protocol used by devices to advertise their identity, capabilities, and neighbors on a local area network. Enabling LLDP on the router facilitates easier network mapping, topology discovery, and troubleshooting in multi-vendor environments. To configure this feature, navigate to *Configuration* → *Services* → *LLDP*.

Figure 77: LLDP configuration page

The table below describes the settings available on the LLDP configuration page. After making any changes, click the *Apply* button to save and activate the new configuration.

Item	Description
<i>Enable LLDP</i>	Activates the Link Layer Discovery Protocol globally on the router.
Mode	Defines the communication mode for all available Ethernet interfaces. For devices equipped with a switch, this includes individual switch ports. The available options for each interface are: • TX/RX – The port both transmits its own LLDP advertisements and receives LLDP packets from neighboring devices. • RX – The port only receives LLDP packets but does not transmit its own. • off – LLDP communication is completely disabled on this specific port.
<i>Transmit Interval</i>	Specifies the frequency, in seconds, at which LLDP advertisement packets are broadcasted to neighbors. The default value is typically 5 seconds, and the permitted range is from 5 to 86400 seconds.

Table 74: LLDP configuration parameters

3.18.6 NTP

The NTP (Network Time Protocol) configuration page allows you to configure the router's NTP client and/or server functions. To open the *NTP* configuration page, click *NTP* in the *Configuration* section of the main menu.

Info

- Some configuration options described may not be available on all router models.
- Upon initial activation, the NTP service may require up to 15 minutes to stabilize due to hardware clock adjustments. During this period, Syslog may report `TIME_ERROR: Clock Unsynchronized`. This is normal and will resolve when synchronization is complete.

Warning

Operating the router as an NTP server while its own clock is not synchronized to a reliable external time source (e.g., remote NTP server, cellular network, or GNSS) is strongly discouraged. This may result in incorrect time propagation to other devices relying on this router.

NTP Configuration	
☐ Enable local NTP server	
☐ Synchronize clock with cellular network	
☐ Synchronize clock with remote NTP server	
Primary NTP Server	
Secondary NTP Server *	
Tertiary NTP Server *	
Maximal Polling Interval	~1 hour
Enable fast initial synchronization	☒
Timezone	GMT+01:00
Daylight Saving Time	yes
* can be blank	
Apply	

Figure 78: NTP configuration page

Info**Time-Synchronization Accuracy**

The accuracy of the router's clock depends on the chosen synchronization source:

- **Remote NTP Server:** This is typically the most accurate method. External NTP servers are usually synchronized to atomic clocks and maintained for high-precision timekeeping.
 - Typical accuracy: Within several milliseconds.
- **Cellular Network (NITZ):** Synchronization via the cellular network (a feature known as NITZ) can vary depending on the operator's infrastructure and is generally less precise than dedicated NTP servers.
 - Typical accuracy: Up to several seconds.
- **GNSS:** While satellite-based time is reliable for general clock correction, its precision for NTP is limited by receiver hardware, atmospheric conditions, and internal processing delays. Therefore, it is not recommended for applications requiring high-precision timekeeping.
 - Typical accuracy: Around one second.

For applications requiring precise time synchronization, always prefer remote NTP servers over GNSS.

Item	Description
<i>Enable local NTP server</i>	Enables the built-in NTP server, allowing devices on the local network to synchronize their clocks with the router. The time accuracy depends on how the router itself is synchronized.
<i>Synchronize clock with cellular network</i>	Enables automatic synchronization of the router's system clock with the time provided by the connected cellular network. This functionality depends on support from the mobile operator.
<i>Synchronize clock with GNSS</i>	Enables automatic synchronization of the router's system clock using the precise time signal from a connected GNSS module. This option is only available if a compatible module is installed and receiving a valid satellite signal.
<i>Synchronize clock with remote NTP server</i>	Enables querying of specified remote NTP servers (up to three, in order of preference) for time synchronization.
<i>Primary NTP Server</i>	IP address or domain name of the primary external NTP server. Used if 'Synchronize clock with remote NTP server' is enabled.
<i>Secondary NTP Server</i>	IP address or domain name of the secondary NTP server (optional). Used if the primary server is unavailable.
<i>Tertiary NTP Server</i>	IP address or domain name of the tertiary NTP server (optional). Used if both primary and secondary are unavailable.
<i>Maximal Polling Interval</i>	Sets the maximum interval for synchronization polls (usually in seconds/minutes). Longer intervals reduce network load but may reduce time accuracy.
<i>Enable fast initial synchronization</i>	If enabled, the router performs a rapid clock update when a significant difference is detected between the system time and the received time, reducing convergence time.
<i>Timezone</i>	Defines the router's local timezone for time display and daylight saving adjustment.
<i>Daylight Saving Time</i>	Enables or disables automatic daylight saving adjustment for the set timezone.

Table 75: NTP configuration items description

3.18.7 SMTP

The router includes a Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) client, which can be configured to send emails for notifications or from scripts. To configure the client, navigate to *Services* → *SMTP*.



Info

- The settings on this page must match the requirements of your email provider’s SMTP server.
- Note that some mobile service providers may block standard SMTP ports, potentially restricting you to using the provider’s own SMTP server.

SMTP Configuration

SMTP Server Address

smtp.domain.com

SMTP Port

465

Secure Method

SSL/TLS

Username

username

Password

.....

Own Email Address

name@domain.com

Apply

Figure 79: SMTP client configuration example

Item	Description
SMTP Server Address	The IP address or domain name of your outgoing mail server.
SMTP Port	The port number the SMTP server uses. Common ports include 25, 465 (SSL/TLS), and 587 (STARTTLS).
Secure Method	The encryption method required by the server. The options are <i>none</i> , <i>SSL/TLS</i> , or <i>STARTTLS</i> .
Username	The username for your email account.
Password	The password for your email account.
Own Email Address	The sender’s email address that will appear on outgoing emails (e.g., my-router@mydomain.com).

Table 76: SMTP client configuration settings

Sending Emails

Once the SMTP client is configured, you can trigger emails in two ways:

- **From a script:** Use the `email` command within a startup or custom script. Scripts are managed on the *Configuration* → *Scripts* page.
- **From the command line:** Connect to the router via SSH and use the `email` command directly.

For detailed syntax and examples of the `email` command, refer to the [Command Line Interface Application Note \[1\]](#).

3.18.8 SMS

The *Configuration* → *Services* → *SMS* page allows you to configure all SMS-related functionality, including automated event notifications, remote control via SMS commands, and direct access to the cellular module using the AT-SMS protocol.

SMS Configuration

☐ Send SMS on power up
☐ Send SMS on connect to mobile network
☐ Send SMS on disconnect from mobile network
☐ Send SMS when datalimit is exceeded
☐ Send SMS when digital input turns On
☐ Send SMS when digital input turns Off
☐ Add timestamp to SMS

Recipient Number(s) comma-separated list

Unit ID *

Digital Input 0 SMS *

Digital Input 1 SMS *

☐ Enable remote control via SMS

Authorized Number(s) comma-separated list or ""

☐ Enable AT-SMS protocol on RS-232

Baudrate ▼

☐ Enable AT-SMS protocol on RS-485

Baudrate ▼

☐ Enable AT-SMS protocol over TCP

TCP Port

* can be blank

Available variables: %in0val%, %in0str%, %in1val%, %in1str%

Figure 80: SMS configuration page

SMS Notifications

This section allows you to configure the router to automatically send an SMS notification to one or more phone numbers when a specific system event occurs.

Item	Description
<i>Send SMS on power up</i>	If checked, an SMS is sent when the router starts.
<i>Send SMS on connect to mobile network</i>	If checked, an SMS is sent when the router establishes a mobile network connection.

Table 77: SMS notification configuration

Item	Description
<i>Send SMS on disconnect from mobile network</i>	If checked, an SMS is sent when the router loses its mobile network connection.
<i>Send SMS when datalimit is exceeded</i>	If checked, an SMS is sent when a mobile data limit is exceeded.
<i>Send SMS when digital input turns On/Off</i>	If checked, an SMS is sent when the state of a digital input changes to On or Off, respectively.
<i>Add timestamp to SMS</i>	If checked, a timestamp (YYYY-MM-DD hh:mm:ss) is added to the beginning of each notification SMS.
<i>Recipient Number(s)</i>	A comma-separated list of recipient phone numbers for the notifications.
<i>Unit ID</i>	A custom identifier for the router, which can be included in the SMS text.
<i>Digital Input 0/1 SMS¹</i>	The custom text to be sent when the corresponding digital input event is triggered.

Table 77: SMS notification configuration (continued)

Remote Control via SMS

The router can be controlled by sending specific commands via SMS from an authorized phone number. To activate this functionality, you must enable it and specify at least one authorized number.

Item	Description
<i>Enable remote control via SMS</i>	Master switch for SMS processing. If enabled, the router processes incoming SMS messages for remote control commands and custom scripts. Note: If disabled, all incoming SMS messages are ignored, and neither control commands nor the custom script at <code>/var/scripts/sms</code> will be executed.
<i>Authorized Number(s)</i>	A comma-separated list of phone numbers authorized to execute standard control commands. To accept commands from any number, enter a single asterisk (*).

Table 78: Remote control configuration

¹You can use variables like `%in0val%` (numeric value 0/1) or `%in0str%` (string "Off"/"On") to include the input's state in the message.

The table below lists all supported control commands. Note that most commands trigger temporary actions that are reverted upon reboot; only the `set profile` command makes a permanent change to the router's configuration.

Command	Description
<code>go online</code>	Connects the router from the mobile network.
<code>go online sim [1 2]</code>	Switches the active mobile connection to the specified SIM card.
<code>go offline</code>	Disconnects the router from the mobile network.
<code>set outx=[0 1]</code>	Sets the state of a digital output (e.g., <code>set out0=1</code>).
<code>set profile [std alt1 alt2 alt3]</code>	Permanently switches to the standard or an alternative configuration profile. For more details, see Chapter 5.3 Change Profile .
<code>reboot</code>	Reboots the router.
<code>get ip</code>	Responds with an SMS containing the current IPv4 address of the active mobile connection.
<code>get ipv6</code>	Responds with an SMS containing the current IPv6 address of the active mobile connection.

Table 79: SMS control commands

Info

For advanced users, custom SMS processing can be implemented using a script located at `/var/scripts/sms`. This script is invoked **only** for SMS messages that are **NOT** processed as standard control commands (e.g., messages with unknown text or from unauthorized numbers). Note that *Enable remote control via SMS* must be enabled for the script to run.

The script receives arguments indicating the sender's authorization status. This allows you to implement custom logic for unhandled messages. The script file does not require execute permissions (`chmod +x`). For more details, see the [Extending Router Functionality](#) Application Note, Chapter *Handling Incoming SMS with a Custom Script*.

AT-SMS Protocol

The AT-SMS protocol provides direct access to the router's cellular module using standard AT commands. This allows for advanced management of SMS messages and retrieval of detailed module status information. This functionality can be enabled over a serial port or a TCP connection.

Item	Description
<i>Enable AT-SMS protocol on RS-232 / RS-485</i>	Enables the protocol on the selected serial port.
<i>Baudrate</i>	Sets the communication speed for the corresponding serial port.
<i>Enable AT-SMS protocol over TCP</i>	Enables the protocol over a network connection.
<i>TCP Port</i>	The TCP port on which the router will listen for AT-SMS connections.

Table 80: AT-SMS protocol configuration

Once a connection is established, you can use the AT commands listed in the table below.

Command	Description
AT+CGMI	Returns the manufacturer identity.
AT+CGMM	Returns the model identity.
AT+CGMR	Returns the model revision.
AT+CGSN	Returns the product serial number.
AT+CIMI	Returns the International Mobile Subscriber Identity (IMSI).
AT+CMGD	Deletes an SMS message.
AT+CMGF	Sets the SMS message format.
AT+CMGL	Lists SMS messages from storage.
AT+CMGR	Reads an SMS message.
AT+CMGS	Sends an SMS message.
AT+CMGW	Writes an SMS message to storage.
AT+CMSS	Sends an SMS message from storage.
AT+CNUM	Returns the SIM card's phone number.
AT+COPS?	Lists available mobile networks.
AT+CPIN?	Retrieves the SIM card status (e.g., PIN required).
AT+CPMS	Selects the SMS memory storage type.
AT+CREG?	Displays the network registration status.
AT+CSCA	Sets the SMS Service Center (SMSC) address.
AT+CSCS	Selects the character set.
AT+CSQ	Returns the signal strength.
AT+GMI	Returns the manufacturer identity.
AT+GMM	Returns the model identity.
AT+GMR	Returns the model revision.
AT+GSN	Returns the product serial number.
ATE[0 1]	Enables or disables command echoing.
ATI	Returns manufacturer and model information.

Table 81: Supported AT commands

Info

For a complete description of all supported AT commands and their syntax, please refer to the *AT Commands (AT-SMS)* Application Note.

3.18.9 SNMP

The *SNMP* page allows you to configure the SNMP v1/v2 or v3 agent, which transmits information about the router and its expansion ports (if applicable) to a management station. To access the *SNMP* page, click *SNMP* in the *Configuration* → *Services* section of the main menu.

SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol) provides status information about network elements such as routers or endpoint devices. In SNMP v3, communication is secured through user-specific encryption and authentication. To enable the SNMP service, select the *Enable SNMP agent* checkbox.

Info

Name, Location, Contact, and Custom identification fields are now configured in the *Configuration* → *System* → *Identification* menu. These fields are no longer present in the SNMP configuration page.

Item	Description
<i>Enable SNMP agent</i>	Turns on the SNMP agent, which allows the router to be managed and monitored using SNMP protocols.
<i>Enable SNMPv1/v2 access</i>	Enables access for SNMPv1 and SNMPv2 protocols. Enter community strings for read and write access.
<i>Community (Read/Write)</i>	Specify the community strings for SNMPv1/v2 access (for read and write operations, respectively). Default is typically <code>public</code> for read and <code>private</code> for write.
<i>Enable SNMPv3 access</i>	Activates configuration options for SNMPv3, allowing for stronger authentication and encryption.
<i>Username</i>	Set the username for SNMPv3, independently for read and write access.
<i>Authentication</i>	Select the authentication algorithm (e.g., SHA-512) for SNMPv3 identity verification.
<i>Authentication Password</i>	Password for generating the authentication key.
<i>Privacy</i>	Select the encryption algorithm (e.g., AES) used to secure SNMPv3 communication.
<i>Privacy Password</i>	Password for encrypting SNMPv3 messages.
<i>Enable I/O extension</i>	Allows monitoring and reporting of digital I/O signals available on the router.
<i>Enable M-BUS extension</i>	Enables support for M-BUS (Meter-Bus) devices. Configure baudrate, parity, and stop bits as required for your metering hardware. External RS232/M-BUS converters may be needed.
<i>Baudrate, Parity, Stop Bits</i>	Configure communication parameters for the M-BUS interface.
<i>Enable reporting to supervisory system</i>	Enables the transmission of statistical and location data to a supervisory or monitoring server.
<i>Address</i>	Destination IP address or hostname for the supervisory system.
<i>Period</i>	Reporting interval in minutes (1–1440).
<i>Location period if moving / halted</i>	Available for GNSS models only. Defines the interval in seconds (0–864000) for location reporting. GNSS service must be enabled. Separate values can be configured for periods when the device is moving and when it is stationary.

Table 82: SNMP configuration items description

SNMP Configuration			
☒ Enable SNMP agent			
☒ Enable SNMPv1/v2 access			
Community	Read public	Write private	
☐ Enable SNMPv3 access			
Username			
Authentication	SHA-512	SHA-512	
Authentication Password			
Privacy	AES	AES	
Privacy Password			
☐ Enable I/O extension			
☐ Enable M-BUS extension			
Baudrate	300		
Parity	even		
Stop Bits	1		
☐ Enable reporting to supervisory system			
Address			
Period		min	1-1440 min
Location period if moving	60	sec	0-864000 sec, needs GNSS on
Location period if halted	60	sec	0-864000 sec, needs GNSS on
* can be blank			
Apply			

Figure 81: SNMP configuration page

Activating the *Enable I/O extension* function allows you to monitor the digital I/O inputs on the router.

Info

Enabling the *Enable M-BUS extension* option and configuring the *Baudrate*, *Parity*, and *Stop Bits* settings allows you to monitor the status of meters connected via the MBUS interface. While the MBUS expansion port is not currently supported, it is possible to use an external RS232/MBUS converter.

Each monitored value is uniquely identified using a numerical identifier called an *OID* (Object Identifier). This identifier consists of a sequence of numbers separated by dots, forming a hierarchical tree structure. Each OID derives from its parent identifier, appending an additional number to indicate its position in the hierarchy. The figure below illustrates the fundamental tree structure used for creating OIDs.

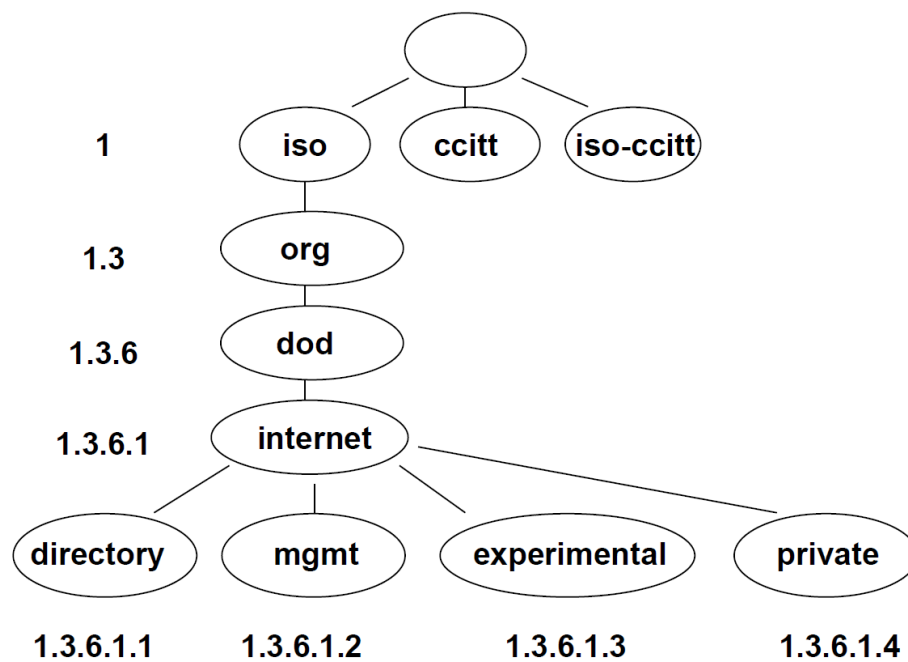


Figure 82: OID basic structure

The SNMP values specific to Advantech routers form a hierarchical tree starting at OID `.1.3.6.1.4.1.30140`. This OID can be interpreted as follows:

iso.org.dod.internet.private.enterprises.conel

This means that the router provides, for example, information about the internal temperature (OID `1.3.6.1.4.1.30140.3.3`) or power voltage (OID `1.3.6.1.4.1.30140.3.4`).

For digital inputs and outputs, the following OID range is used:

OID	Description
<code>.1.3.6.1.4.1.30140.2.3.1.0</code>	Digital input BIN0 (values: 0,1)
<code>.1.3.6.1.4.1.30140.2.3.2.0</code>	Digital output OUT0 (values: 0,1)
<code>.1.3.6.1.4.1.30140.2.3.3.0</code>	Digital input BIN1 (values: 0,1)

Table 83: Object identifiers for digital inputs and outputs

Info

The list of available and supported OIDs, along with other details, can be found in the application note *SNMP Object Identifiers* [12].

The next figure illustrates SNMP browsing in the *MIB Browser*.

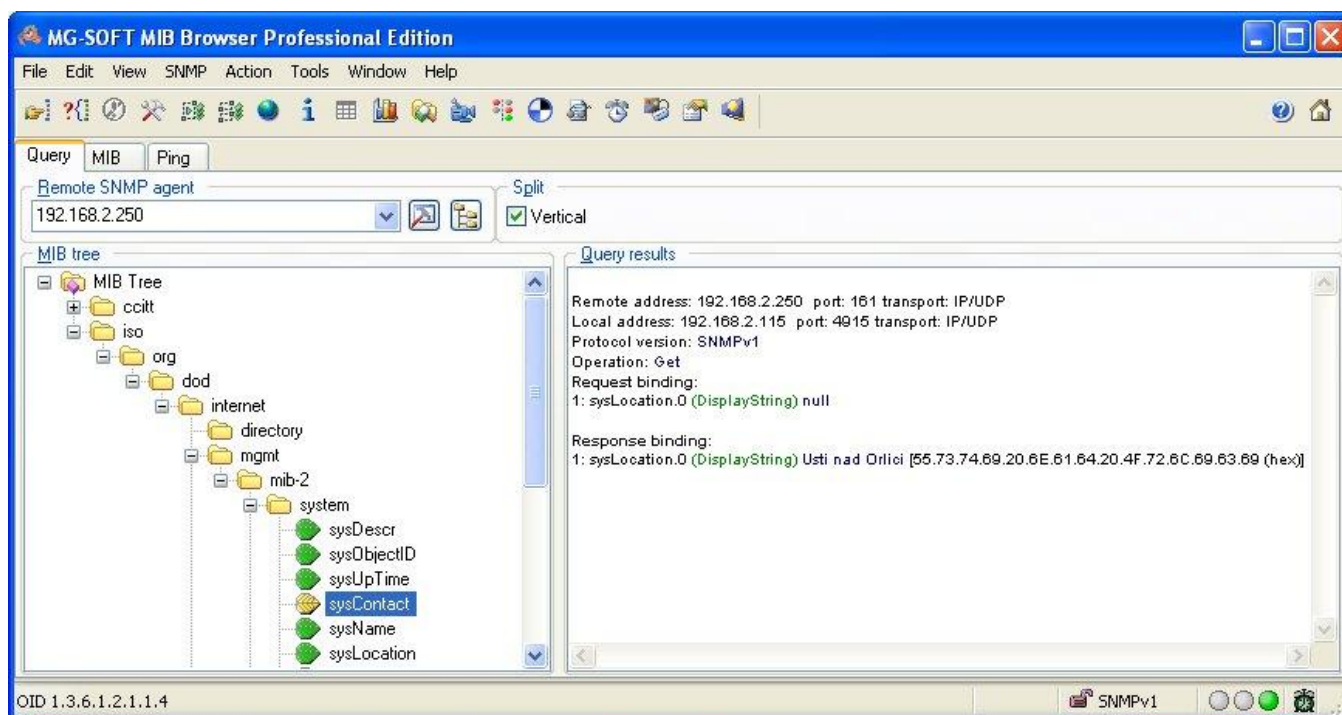


Figure 83: MIB browser example

To access a specific device, enter the IP address of the SNMP agent (the router) in the *Remote SNMP Agent* field. The dialog displays the internal variables in the MIB tree after entering the IP address. Additionally, you can check the status of internal variables by entering their corresponding OID.

The path to the SNMP objects is:

iso → *org* → *dod* → *internet* → *private* → *enterprises* → *Conel* → *protocols*

The path to router-specific information is:

iso → *org* → *dod* → *internet* → *mgmt* → *mib-2* → *system*

3.18.10 SSH

The Secure Shell (SSH) service allows for secure command-line access to the router's operating system. To configure the SSH server, navigate to *Services* → *SSH*.

Info

Access Restriction: Please note that only users assigned the *Admin* role are authorized to log in to the router via SSH. Users with a standard *User* role cannot access the command line.

Figure 84: SSH server configuration page

General Settings

Item	Description
<i>Enable SSH service</i>	Enables or disables the SSH server on the router.
<i>Port</i>	The TCP port on which the SSH server will listen for incoming connections. The default is port 22.
<i>Session Timeout</i>	The duration of inactivity (in minutes) after which an SSH session will be automatically disconnected.
<i>Login Banner</i>	A custom message that will be displayed to users before they are prompted for their login credentials.

Table 84: General SSH settings

Host Key Management

The SSH host key is a unique cryptographic key used by clients to verify the router’s identity and prevent man-in-the-middle attacks.



Info

When you connect to the router via SSH for the first time, your client will prompt you to accept the host key’s fingerprint. If the host key ever changes (e.g., after a new one is generated), your client will display a security warning. This is expected behavior.

Item	Description
Keep the current SSH key	Retains the existing host key. This is the default and recommended option for normal operation.
Generate a new SSH key	Discards the current key and generates a new one. This is typically only done for security policy reasons.
Key Type	The cryptographic algorithm used for the host key. ED25519 is a modern, fast, and secure elliptic curve algorithm. RSA is an older, widely supported standard.

Table 85: SSH host key settings

3.18.11 Syslog

The Syslog service collects and manages system messages from the router's operating system and various applications. To configure this service, navigate to *Services* → *Syslog*.

The collected logs can be viewed on the *Status* → *System Log* page (see Chapter 2.11 *System Log*) or via the command line with the `slog` command.

Syslog Configuration	
Log Size Limit	10 KiB 1-1000000 KiB
Log Persistent	yes
Minimum Severity	Informational
Mark Message Period	sec
Read Kernel Log	☐
Enable Forwarding	☐
Protocol	SSL/TLS
Remote Host	
Remote Port	514
Device ID *	
Authentication	Certificate validity
Acceptable Peers	
CA Certificates	Load From File...
Local Certificate *	Load From File...
Local Private Key *	Load From File...
* can be blank Apply	

Figure 85: Syslog configuration page

Local Logging

These settings control how logs are stored on the router itself.

Setting	Description
<i>Log Size Limit</i>	Sets the maximum size (in KiB) for the local log files. The default is 10 KiB.
<i>Log Persistent</i>	If enabled, the system log will be saved in persistent memory and will survive a router reboot.
<i>Minimum Severity</i>	Sets the minimum severity level for messages to be logged by the system. Levels range from <i>Emergency</i> (highest severity, least detail) to <i>Debug</i> (lowest severity, most detail). Note: Some components, such as IPsec or certain Router Apps, have their own independent logging level settings. These act as a secondary filter. A service-specific setting can make that service less verbose than the global setting, but it cannot force the system to log messages that fall below the global <i>Minimum Severity</i> level.
<i>Mark Message Period</i>	Sets a time interval for the router to write a – MARK – message to the log, which acts as a keepalive indicator.
<i>Read Kernel Log</i>	Check this to include kernel-level messages (e.g., firewall logs, device notifications) in the system log.

Table 86: Local logging settings

Remote Forwarding

The router can forward log messages in real-time to a remote Syslog server for centralized storage and analysis.

Setting	Description
<i>Enable Forwarding</i>	Enables the forwarding of all log messages to a remote host.
<i>Protocol</i>	The transport protocol for forwarding: <i>UDP</i> , <i>TCP</i> , or <i>SSL/TLS</i> for a secure connection.
<i>Remote Host</i>	The hostname or IP address of the remote Syslog server.
<i>Remote Port</i>	The port number on which the remote server is listening.
<i>Device ID</i>	A custom identifier for the router, used in the forwarded log messages. If left blank, the default ID <i>Router</i> is used.

Table 87: Remote forwarding settings

Remote Server Authentication

These settings configure authentication when using the *SSL/TLS* protocol for secure forwarding.

Setting	Description
<i>Authentication</i>	The method used to authenticate the remote server: • None (encryption only): Encrypts the connection but does not authenticate the server. • Certificate fingerprint: Authenticates the server by matching its certificate fingerprint against the one in <i>Acceptable Peers</i>. • Certificate validity: Authenticates any server that presents a valid certificate signed by the specified CA. • Certified peer name: Authenticates the server by checking its certificate's validity and matching its DNS name or Common Name against the <i>Acceptable Peers</i> list.
<i>Acceptable Peers</i>	A list of accepted certificate fingerprints (SHA1) or DNS/Common Names. Wildcards (e.g., *.example.net) are supported for names.
<i>CA Certificates</i>	A file containing the full CA certificate chain in PEM format, used to validate the remote server's certificate.
<i>Local Certificate</i>	A local client certificate (in PEM format) to present to the remote server if it requires client authentication.
<i>Local Private Key</i>	The private key corresponding to the <i>Local Certificate</i> .

Table 88: Remote server authentication settings

3.18.12 Telnet

The Telnet service provides unencrypted, text-based command-line access to the router. To configure it, navigate to *Services* → *Telnet*.



Warning

Telnet is an insecure protocol. All data, including usernames and passwords, is transmitted in plain text. It is strongly recommended to use the secure SSH service instead.

Telnet Configuration

☐ Enable Telnet service

Maximum Sessions 1-500

Figure 86: Telnet server configuration page

Item	Description
Enable Telnet service	Enables the Telnet server on the router.
Maximum Sessions	The maximum number of concurrent Telnet sessions allowed. The allowed range is from 1 to 500.

Table 89: Telnet configuration settings

3.19 Peripheral Ports

Info

Some interfaces may not be available for all models.

Configuration of physical interfaces such as RS-232, RS-485, USB serial converter, and digital Inputs/Outputs is now accessible from the *Configuration* → *Peripheral Ports* menu. Each interface is configured using its own subpage. Below, each port type is described in its own section.

3.19.1 RS-232 Port

On the RS-232 Port configuration page, you can activate the port by ticking the *Enable access over TCP/UDP* checkbox. Additional settings are detailed in the table below. Support is provided for both IPv4 and IPv6 TCP/UDP client/server configurations.

RS-232 Serial Port Configuration			
☐ Enable access over TCP/UDP			
Baudrate	9600	▼	
Data Bits	8	▼	
Parity	none	▼	
Stop Bits	1	▼	
Flow Control	none	▼	
Split Timeout	20	msec	1-10000 msec
Protocol	TCP	▼	
Mode	server	▼	
Server Address			
TCP Port			
Inactivity Timeout *		sec	1-86400 sec
☐ Reject new connections			
☐ Check TCP connection			
Keepalive Time	3600	sec	1-86400 sec
Keepalive Interval	10	sec	1-120 sec
Keepalive Probes	5		1-10
* can be blank			
Apply			

Figure 87: RS-232 serial port configuration

Item	Description
<i>Baudrate</i>	Configurable communication speed: 300, 600, 1200, 2400, 4800, 9600 (default), 19200, 38400, 57600, 115200, 230400 .
<i>Data Bits</i>	Number of data bits: 5, 6, 7, 8 (default).
<i>Parity</i>	Parity control bit: • None – Data is sent without a parity bit. • Even – Data is sent with even parity. • Odd – Data is sent with odd parity.
<i>Stop Bits</i>	Number of stop bits: 1 (default), 2 .
<i>Flow Control</i>	Select the flow control method: None or Hardware .
<i>Split Timeout</i>	Time threshold for message segmentation. If the gap between two characters exceeds this value (in milliseconds), any buffered characters are sent over the network.
<i>Protocol</i>	Communication protocol: • TCP – Communication using the connection-oriented TCP protocol. • UDP – Communication using the connectionless UDP protocol.
<i>Mode</i>	Connection mode for TCP protocol: • server – The router listens for incoming TCP connection requests on the specified port. • client – The router initiates a connection to a TCP server using the specified IP address and port.
<i>Server Address</i>	When in <i>client</i> mode, specify the IP address or domain name of the remote server. Both IPv4 and IPv6 are supported.
<i>TCP Port</i>	The TCP/UDP port for communication. This setting applies to both server and client modes.
<i>Inactivity Timeout</i>	The time in seconds after which an inactive TCP/UDP connection is automatically terminated.
<i>Reject new connections</i>	If enabled, the router rejects new incoming connections when one is already active, enforcing a single-client connection.
<i>Check TCP connection</i>	If enabled, the router actively monitors the TCP connection status using keepalive packets.
<i>Keepalive Time</i>	The time interval in seconds after which the router sends a keepalive probe to verify the connection.
<i>Keepalive Interval</i>	The duration in seconds the router waits for a response to a probe before re-sending it.
<i>Keepalive Probes</i>	The number of unanswered probes before the connection is considered inactive.

Table 90: RS-232 serial port configuration items

Ethernet-to-Serial Communication Example

This scenario demonstrates how to use the router as a gateway to connect a PC on an Ethernet network to a remote serial device. As shown in the figure, a PC with the IP address 192.168.1.100 sends data to the remote router (10.0.0.2) on TCP port 2000. This remote router is configured in *TCP Server* mode and listens for incoming connections. Once a connection is established, it forwards all data from the TCP socket to its RS-232 port, which is connected to the PLC. The first router (192.168.1.1) serves as the default gateway for the PC.

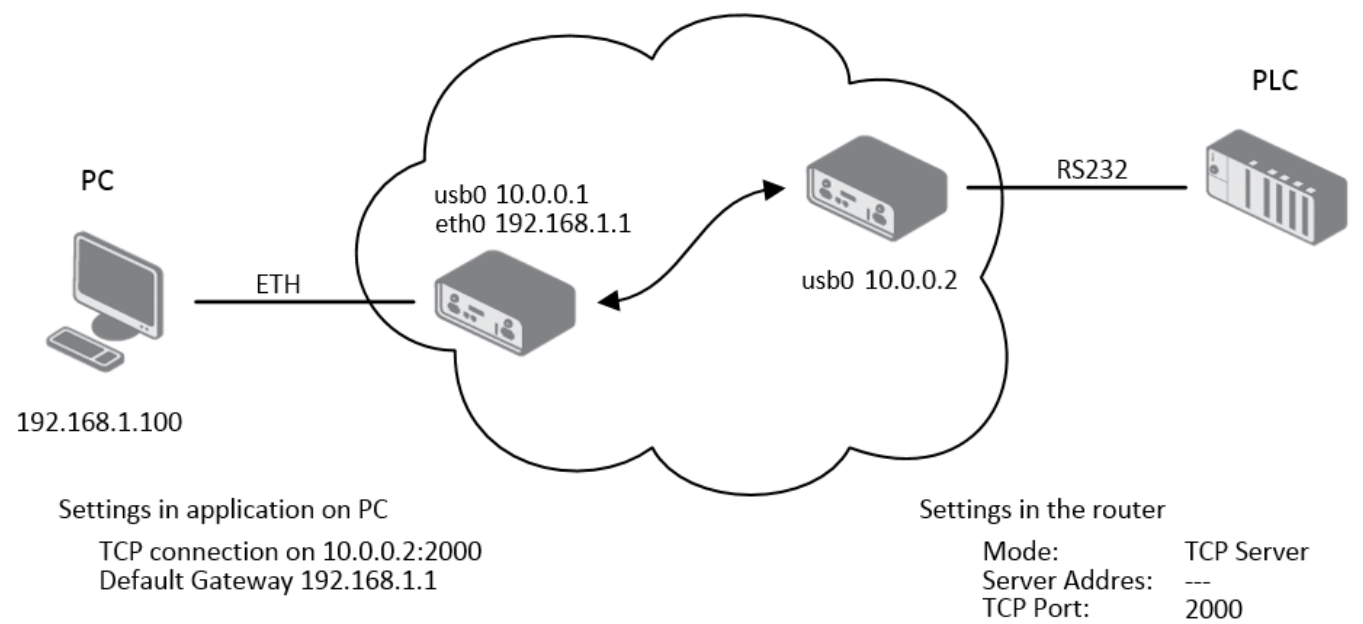


Figure 88: Ethernet-to-serial communication configuration example

Serial Interface Communication (Serial Tunnel) Example

This example illustrates how to create a transparent serial tunnel over an IP network, effectively extending a serial connection over a long distance. The PC is connected via RS-232 to the first router (10.0.0.1), which is configured in *TCP Client* mode. It initiates a connection to the second router (10.0.0.2) on port 2000. The second router, configured as a *TCP Server*, is connected to the PLC via its RS-232 port. Data sent from the PC is automatically tunneled over the TCP connection to the second router and then passed to the PLC.

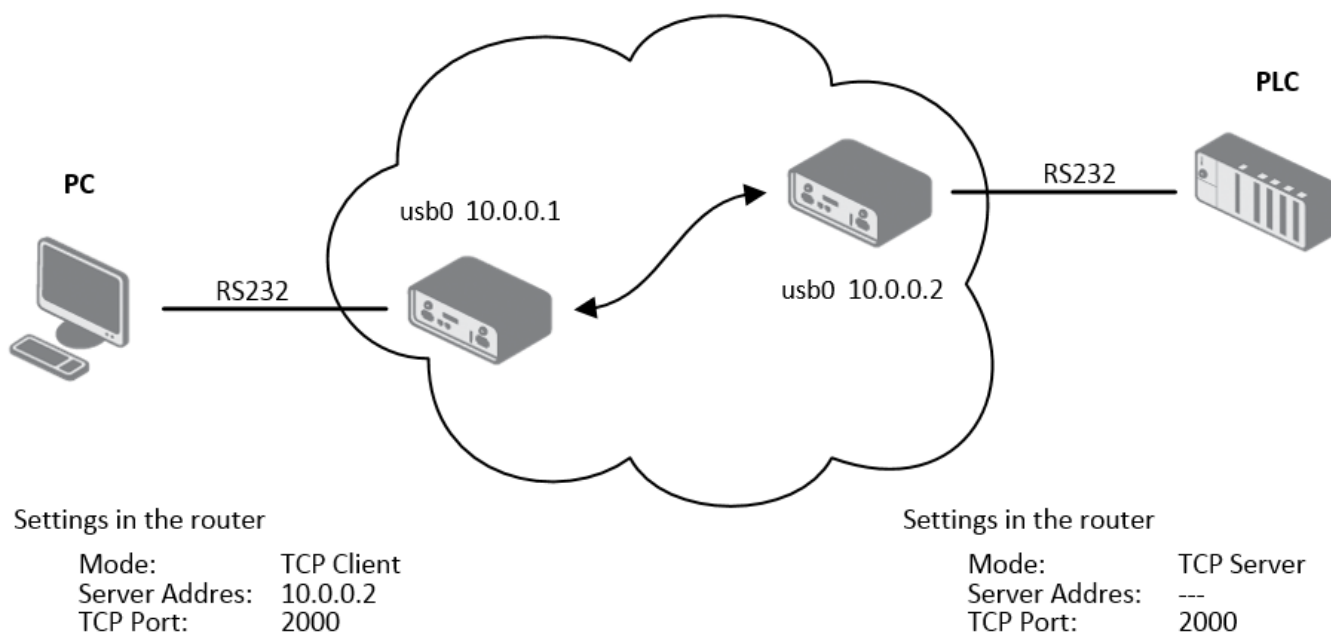


Figure 89: Serial interface configuration example

3.19.2 RS-485 Port

The RS-485 port configuration is analogous to the RS-232 port. The configuration items and their meanings are identical to those described in the previous section for the RS-232 port.

3.19.3 USB Port

Info

- The USB port is automatically disabled to prevent damage during an overload condition, which occurs when a connected device draws excessive current. Normal operation is restored after rebooting the router.
- For detailed instructions on creating, mounting, checking, and unmounting a file system on a USB flash drive, refer to the application note for the [Ext4 Filesystem Utilities](#) Router App.

The USB port supports USB **mass storage devices** and **serial converters**. Configuration can be performed via the *USB Port* menu item.

By unchecking the *Enable USB port* option, the USB port can be disabled. Before doing so, ensure that all filesystems on attached storage are properly unmounted to prevent data corruption. This can be done in the console using the `umount /mnt/usb_storage` command, for example.

Enabling *Enable USB serial converter access over TCP/UDP* allows the router to create a network-accessible **virtual serial port** for a supported device connected to its USB port. This enables communication with serial-based equipment (e.g., sensors or industrial controllers) over a TCP or UDP connection. Consequently, you can remotely monitor or configure serial devices without needing a dedicated on-site computer. All subsequent configuration items for this feature are identical to those described in the RS-232 Port section. For a list of supported USB converters, refer to the [Extending Router Functionality](#) application note. Refer to Chapter 3.19.3 for instructions on adding support for unsupported serial converters.

Mounting a USB Flash Drive to the System

To access a USB flash drive within the router's system, it must first be mounted. Follow these steps:

1. **Connect the USB Flash Drive**

Plug the USB flash drive into the router's USB port.

2. **Identify the USB Flash Drive**

Run the `dmesg` command to display recent system messages and identify the name of the newly connected device. Look for an entry such as `/dev/sda`, with partitions like `/dev/sda1`.

3. **Create a Mount Point (Optional)**

If you prefer a dedicated directory, create one: `mkdir /mnt/usb`

4. **Mount the USB Flash Drive**

Use the mount command to attach the drive: `mount /dev/sda1 /mnt/usb`

5. **Verify Successful Mount**

List mounted file systems with `mount` or check the directory contents with `ls /mnt/usb` to confirm the files are accessible.

6. **Unmounting the USB Flash Drive**

When finished, unmount the drive to prevent data corruption: `umount /mnt/usb`.

Once unmounted, you can safely remove the flash drive. If you encounter issues, ensure the drive is properly connected and its file system (e.g., vfat, ext4, exfat) is supported.

Info

If the mount command fails, you may need to specify the filesystem type with the `-t` option, for example: `mount -t vfat /dev/sda1 /mnt/usb`

Using an Unsupported Serial Converter Chip

In some cases, a serial converter chip may not be natively supported. USB devices are identified by a **Vendor ID (VID)** and a **Product ID (PID)**.

Finding the VID and PID

You can find the VID and PID of your device:

- **On Linux:** Use the `lsusb` command (not available in the router's environment).
- **On Windows:** Open *Device Manager*, locate your device, and find the IDs in its properties.

Enabling the Unsupported Device

Once you have the VID and PID, you can add support for the device by echoing these values to the `ftdi_sio` driver:

```
echo <VID> <PID> > /sys/bus/usb-serial/drivers/ftdi_sio/new_id
```

For example, for a device with VID '0403' and PID 'd921', use:

```
echo 0403 d921 > /sys/bus/usb-serial/drivers/ftdi_sio/new_id
```

After running this command, the driver should recognize the device. If not, try reloading the driver or reconnecting the device.

3.19.4 Inputs/Outputs

Info

Starting from router firmware version 6.6.0, the USR LED settings on this page replace the original *USR LED Management* RouterApp, and it is strongly recommended to use this built-in feature instead of the app.

On the *Inputs/Outputs* page, you can manually turn a digital output on or off and define the operation mode for the router's USR LED. In the image below, *Digital Output 0* is *On* and can be turned off by clicking the *Off* button. Conversely, *Digital Output 1* is *Off* and can be turned on by clicking the *On* button.

Figure 90: Inputs/Outputs configuration example

By enabling *Enable USR LED Management*, you can set the desired operation mode for the USR LED. The available modes are described in the table below:

Item	Description
<i>Always OFF</i>	The LED is permanently off.
<i>Always ON</i>	The LED is permanently on. This is useful for physically locating the router among other devices.
<i>Digital Input x</i>	The LED lights when digital input x is <i>On</i> . The state is updated every 100 ms.
<i>Digital Output x</i>	The LED lights when digital output x is <i>On</i> . The state is updated every 100 ms.
<i>RS-xxx Rx activity</i>	The LED lights when the serial interface on peripheral port xxx is receiving data.
<i>RS-xxx Tx activity</i>	The LED lights when the serial interface on peripheral port xxx is transmitting data.
<i>RS-xxx Rx and Tx activity</i>	The LED lights when the serial interface on peripheral port xxx is receiving and/or transmitting data.
<i>WiFi AP activity</i>	The LED lights when a client is connected to the router's WiFi AP and flashes during communication.
<i>WiFi STA activity</i>	The LED lights when the router is connected to a remote WiFi AP and flashes during communication.
<i>OpenVPN activity</i>	The LED lights when an OpenVPN tunnel is established and has received data.
<i>IPsec active</i>	The LED lights when an IPsec tunnel is established.
<i>WireGuard activity</i>	The LED lights when a WireGuard tunnel is established and has received data.
<i>WebAccess/DMP active</i>	The LED lights when the router is connected to a WebAccess/DMP server.

Table 91: USR LED operation modes overview

3.20 System

The System configuration menu contains settings that are common to the entire router system, such as authentication, identification, and automatic updates.

3.20.1 Authentication

The *Configuration* → *System* → *Authentication* page allows for the configuration of user authentication methods, password policies, and account lockout settings. The router can authenticate users against its local database or against external RADIUS or TACACS+ servers.

Authentication Configuration			
Two-Factor Authentication	disabled ▼		
Mode	local user database ▼		
Lock Account After *	3	fails	1-100 fails
Count Fails For	3600	sec	10-86400 sec
Unlock After	60	sec	1-86400 sec
Force Password Complexity	very weak ▼		
Expire Password After *		days	1-99998 days
Delay After Fail *	1	sec	1-60 sec
Debug	disabled ▼		
* can be blank			
Apply			

Figure 91: Authentication configuration page

General Settings

These settings are common across all authentication modes.

Item	Description
<i>Two-Factor Authentication</i>	Enables a second layer of security for user logins. Options include <i>Google Authenticator</i> or <i>OATH</i> . See Chapter for details.
<i>Mode</i>	Selects the primary authentication method: • Local user database: Authenticates against the router's local user list (see Chapter 5.1 Manage Users). • RADIUS with fallback: Authenticates against a RADIUS server. If the server is unreachable, it falls back to the local database. • RADIUS only: Authenticates only against a RADIUS server. Caution: If the server is unreachable, login will be impossible. • TACACS+ with fallback: Authenticates against a TACACS+ server, with fallback to the local database. • TACACS+ only: Authenticates only against a TACACS+ server. Caution: If the server is unreachable, login will be impossible.

Table 92: General authentication configuration options

Item	Description
<i>Lock Account After</i>	The number of failed login attempts before an account is locked.
<i>Count Fails For</i>	The time window in seconds during which failed attempts are counted.
<i>Unlock After</i>	The duration in seconds after which a locked account is automatically unlocked.
<i>Force Password Complexity</i>	Enforces minimum password strength requirements. There are four character classes: uppercase letters (A-Z), lowercase letters (a-z), digits (0-9), and other characters (e.g., <code>!@#\$+.</code>). • Very Weak: ○ Must be at least 6 characters long. ○ Must not contain the username. ○ Must not be a palindrome. • Weak: ○ Must be at least 8 characters long. ○ Must contain characters from at least 2 of the 4 classes. ○ Must not contain the username. ○ Must not be a palindrome. • Good: ○ Must be at least 12 characters long. ○ Must contain characters from at least 3 of the 4 classes. ○ Must not contain more than 3 identical consecutive characters. ○ Must not contain the username. ○ Must not be a palindrome. • Strong: ○ Must be at least 16 characters long. ○ Must contain characters from all 4 classes. ○ Must not contain more than 2 identical consecutive characters. ○ Must not contain the username. ○ Must not be a palindrome.
<i>Expire Password After</i>	The number of days until a user password expires, forcing a change on next login. See Chapter .
<i>Delay After Fail</i>	The time in seconds the login screen is disabled after a failed attempt.
<i>Debug</i>	Enables detailed authentication-related messages in the system log.

Table 92: General authentication configuration options (continued)

RADIUS Mode

To use RADIUS for authentication, select either *RADIUS with fallback* or *RADIUS only* and configure the server details.

Authentication Configuration				
Two-Factor Authentication	disabled ▼			
Mode	RADIUS only ▼			
RADIUS Server(s)				
Server	Port *	Secret	Timeout *	
☐ []	[]	[]	[] sec	1-60 sec
☐ []	[]	[]	[] sec	1-60 sec
Take Over Server Users	disabled ▼			
Default User Role	admin ▼			
Delay After Fail *	1	sec	1-60 sec	
Debug	disabled ▼			
* can be blank				
Apply				

Figure 92: RADIUS configuration

Warning

For a RADIUS user to log in, a corresponding user account must exist on the router locally. This account can be created manually (see Chapter [5.1 Manage Users](#)) or automatically by enabling the *Take Over Server Users* option.

Item	Description
Server	The IP address of the primary and optional secondary RADIUS server.
Port	The UDP port of the RADIUS server (default is 1812).
Secret	The shared secret used to encrypt communication with the RADIUS server.
Timeout	The time in seconds to wait for a response from the RADIUS server.
Take Over Server Users	If enabled, a local user account will be created automatically upon successful RADIUS authentication if one does not already exist. The local account is created without a password.
Default User Role	Assigns a default role (<i>Admin</i> or <i>User</i>) to users created via the <i>Take Over</i> feature, unless a role is provided by the RADIUS server via the <i>Service-Type</i> attribute. • <i>Administrative-User</i>: Assigns the <i>Admin</i> role. • <i>NAS-Prompt-User</i>: Assigns the <i>User</i> role.

Table 93: RADIUS configuration options

TACACS+ Mode

To use TACACS+ for authentication, select either *TACACS+ with fallback* or *TACACS+ only* and configure the server details.

Authentication Configuration			
Two-Factor Authentication	disabled ▼		
Mode	TACACS+ only ▼		
TACACS+ Server(s)			
Authentication Type	ASCII ▼		
Timeout *		sec	1-60 sec
Server	Port *	Secret	
☐			
☐			
Take Over Server Users	disabled ▼		
Default User Role	admin ▼		
Delay After Fail *	1	sec	1-60 sec
Debug	disabled ▼		
* can be blank			
Apply			

Figure 93: TACACS+ configuration

Warning

As with RADIUS, a corresponding local user account is required for TACACS+ authentication. This account can be created manually or automatically with the *Take Over Server Users* option, as detailed in Chapter 5.1 *Manage Users*.

Item	Description
<i>Authentication Type</i>	The authentication protocol to use: <i>ASCII</i> , <i>PAP</i> , or <i>CHAP</i> .
<i>Timeout</i>	The time in seconds to wait for a response from the TACACS+ server.
<i>Server</i>	The IP address of the primary and optional secondary TACACS+ server.
<i>Port</i>	The TCP port of the TACACS+ server (default is 49).
<i>Secret</i>	The shared secret used to encrypt communication with the TACACS+ server.
<i>Take Over Server Users</i>	If enabled, a local user account will be created automatically upon successful TACACS+ authentication if one does not already exist. The local account is created without a password.
<i>Default User Role</i>	Assigns a default role (<i>Admin</i> or <i>User</i>) to users created via the <i>Take Over</i> feature.

Table 94: TACACS+ configuration options

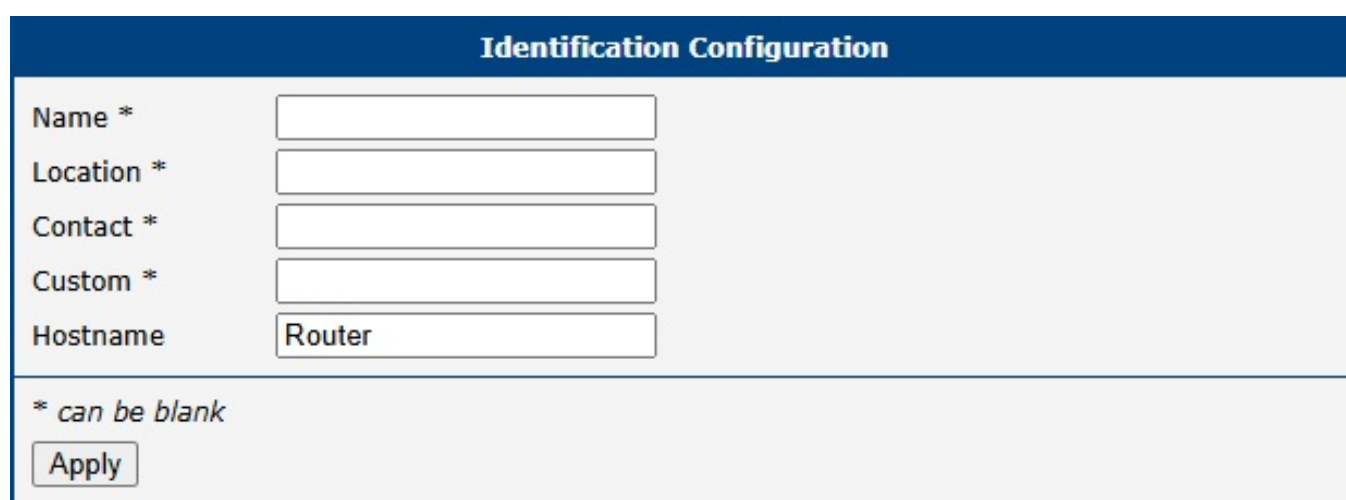
3.20.2 Identification

The *Configuration* → *System* → *Identification* page allows you to define several strings used to identify the router. These values serve multiple purposes:

- The *Name* and *Location* strings are displayed in the top-right corner of the web interface for easy identification.
- The *Name*, *Location*, *Contact*, and *Custom* fields are all exposed via the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) for remote monitoring, as detailed in Chapter 3.18.9 *SNMP*.

Info

Previously, these settings were located on the SNMP configuration page. They have been moved here to serve as a central point for router identification.



Identification Configuration

Name *

Location *

Contact *

Custom *

Hostname

* can be blank

Figure 94: Identification configuration page

Item	Description
<i>Name</i>	A custom name for the router (e.g., "Main Office Gateway"). This is also used as the SNMP System Name (sysName).
<i>Location</i>	The physical location of the router (e.g., "Server Room A"). This is used as the SNMP System Location (sysLocation).
<i>Contact</i>	Contact information for the person responsible for the device (e.g., an email address or phone number). This is used as the SNMP System Contact (sysContact).
<i>Custom</i>	A custom string for any additional information. This is used as the SNMP infoCustom field.
<i>Hostname</i>	The hostname of the router, used to identify the device on the local network (e.g., in DHCP leases).

Table 95: Identification configuration items

3.20.3 Automatic Update

The router can be configured to automatically download and apply firmware and configuration updates from a remote server or a local USB drive. This feature is essential for managing large-scale deployments and ensuring that devices are always up-to-date. The settings are located on the *Configuration* → *System* → *Automatic Update* page.

Figure 95: Automatic Update configuration page

Update Configuration

The following table describes the parameters for configuring the automatic update process.

Item	Description
<i>Enable automatic update of configuration</i>	Enables the automatic update of the router's configuration file.
<i>Enable automatic update of firmware</i>	Enables the automatic update of the router's firmware.
<i>Source</i>	Specifies the location of the update files: • HTTP(S)/FTP(S) server: Updates are downloaded from the <i>Base URL</i>. The protocol (HTTP, HTTPS, FTP, or FTPS) is determined by the URL prefix. • USB flash drive: The router searches for update files in the root directory of a connected USB drive. • Both: The router checks both the remote server and a connected USB drive.

Table 96: Automatic Update configuration options

Item	Description
Base URL	The base URL of the remote server where update files are stored. The default protocol is HTTPS. To use a different protocol (HTTP, FTP, or FTPS), the prefix must be specified explicitly (e.g., http://myupdateserver.com).
Unit ID	A custom identifier used as the filename for the configuration file. If this field is empty, the router defaults to using its ETH0 MAC address as the filename.
Decryption Password	The password required to decrypt an encrypted configuration file.
Update Window Start	The hour (1-24) when the daily update check should begin. If set to <i>dynamic</i> , the check runs five minutes after boot and every 24 hours thereafter.
Update Window Length	A duration in minutes that defines a window of time, starting at the <i>Update Window Start</i> , during which the update will be performed at a random moment. This helps to distribute the load on the update server in large deployments.
Skip Certificate Verification	If checked, the router will not validate the SSL/TLS certificate of the remote HTTPS/FTPS server.
CA Certificate	The custom CA certificate used for server validation.

Table 96: Automatic Update configuration options (continued)

File Naming Conventions

The router looks for files with specific names on the update source. All files must be in a `tar.gz` archive.

- **Firmware:** The firmware filename is composed of the router model and a `.bin` extension (e.g., `icr-440x.bin`). The exact filename can be found on the *Administration* → *Update Firmware* page (see Chapter 5.9 *Update Firmware*). A corresponding version file (`*.ver`) must also be present on the server.
- **Configuration:** The configuration filename is determined by the *Unit ID*. If the *Unit ID* is specified, that value is used as the filename (e.g., `test.cfg`). If it is left blank, the router will look for a file named after its ETH0 MAC address, with colons replaced by dots (e.g., `00.11.22.33.44.55.cfg`).

Warning

- Always upload both the `*.bin` and `*.ver` files to the server for firmware updates. If the `*.ver` file is missing and the server returns an incorrect success code, the router may enter a continuous download loop.
- Firmware updates may introduce incompatibilities with installed Router Apps. Always check the application notes for compatibility information and update Router Apps as needed.
- If *Update Window Start* is set to *dynamic*, the automatic update process runs five minutes after every boot, including after a manual firmware upgrade. With a fixed hour configured, it instead waits until that scheduled hour.

Configuration Examples

Example 1: Scheduled Update

In this example, an ICR-4401 router is configured to check for a new firmware or configuration file daily at 1:00 AM from a specific URL.

- Firmware URL: <https://example.com/icr-440x.bin>
- Configuration URL: <https://example.com/test.cfg>

Automatic Update

☒ Enable automatic update of configuration
☒ Enable automatic update of firmware

Source

HTTP(S) / FTP(S) ▼

Base URL

https://example.com

Unit ID *

test

Decryption Password *

👁

Update Window Start

1:00 ▼

Update Window Length *

min 0-480 min

Skip Certificate Verification ☒

Use Custom CA Certificate ☐

CA Certificate *

Load From File...

* can be blank

Apply

Figure 96: Example of a scheduled automatic update

Example 2: Update Based on MAC Address with Encrypted Configuration

This example shows an ICR-4161 router configured to check for updates within a two-hour window. The configuration file is encrypted and identified by the router's MAC address.

- Firmware URL: <https://example.com/icr-416x.bin>
- Configuration URL: <https://example.com/00.11.22.33.44.55.cfg>

Automatic Update

☒ Enable automatic update of configuration
☒ Enable automatic update of firmware

Source

HTTP(S) / FTP(S) ▼

Base URL

Unit ID *

Decryption Password *



Update Window Start

1:00 ▼

Update Window Length *

min 0-480 min

Skip Certificate Verification ☒

Use Custom CA Certificate ☐

CA Certificate *

Load From File...

* can be blank

Figure 97: Example of an automatic update using the MAC address

3.21 Events

The *Configuration* → *Events* page provides a powerful system for triggering automated actions in response to specific system events. This feature allows you to create custom notifications and responses for monitoring the router's status and health.

Info

Starting with firmware version 6.6.0, this functionality replaces the legacy *Event Notificator* RouterApp. It is strongly recommended to use this built-in feature instead of the old RouterApp.

To begin, check the *Enable events notifications* box at the top of the page.

Events Configuration									
☐ Enable events notifications									
Event	SNMP	Syslog	SMS Group 1	SMS Group 2	E-mail Group 1	E-mail Group 2	E-mail Group 3	E-mail Group 4	ID
System Rebooted	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	1
Configuration Changed	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	2
Password Changed	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	3
Login Failed	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	4
Temperature Reached	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	5
ETH0 Disconnected	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	10
Test Triggered	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	99
Application 1	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	101
Application 2	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	102
SMS Group 1									comma-separated list
SMS Group 2									comma-separated list
E-mail Group 1									comma-separated list
E-mail Group 2									comma-separated list
E-mail Group 3									comma-separated list
E-mail Group 4									comma-separated list
Script Path 1									
Script Path 2									
Temperature Limit *			°C		1-100°C				
SNMP Manager IPv4 Address									
SNMP Manager Port	162								
SNMP Version	3								
PDU Type	Inform								
Engine ID Payload Type	ETH0 MAC address								
Engine ID Payload *									
Engine ID	800075BC0302ADFF00009								
Context Name *									
Username	admin								
Authentication	SHA-512								
Authentication Password									8-64 char
Privacy	AES								
Privacy Password									8-64 char
* can be blank									
Apply									

Figure 98: Events configuration page

Event-Action Matrix

The core of this feature is the matrix, which links system events (rows) to specific actions (columns). When a particular event occurs, the router checks this matrix and executes all the actions that are checked in that event's row.

Event	Description
<i>System Rebooted</i>	Triggered when the router finishes its boot sequence.
<i>Configuration Changed</i>	Triggered whenever the router's configuration is modified and saved.
<i>Password Changed</i>	Triggered when a user password is changed.
<i>Login Failed</i>	Triggered after any unsuccessful login attempt to the router, either via the web interface or an SSH connection.
<i>Temperature Reached</i>	Triggered when the internal temperature exceeds the limit defined in the <i>Temperature Limit</i> field.
<i>ETHx Disconnected</i>	Triggered when the link on the corresponding Ethernet port is lost.
<i>Test Triggered</i>	A virtual event designed specifically for testing your configured actions (e.g., to verify that an SMS or email is sent correctly). Note: Before testing, you must ensure that the event system is enabled, the desired actions are configured, and all settings are saved. The test can then be triggered manually by clicking on the event name itself, which acts as a hyperlink in the web interface.
<i>Application 1/2</i>	Custom events that can be triggered by user scripts or applications (IDs 101 and 102).

Table 97: Available events

Action	Description
<i>SNMP</i>	Sends an SNMP trap to the defined SNMP manager.
<i>Syslog</i>	Writes a message to the system log.
<i>SMS Group 1/2</i>	Sends an SMS to all numbers in the specified SMS group. Only available on cellular router models.
<i>E-mail Group 1-4</i>	Sends an email to all addresses in the specified E-mail group.
<i>Script 1/2</i>	Executes the user script located at the specified path.

Table 98: Available actions

Action Definitions

This section is where you define the details for each action.

Item	Description
<i>SMS Group 1/2</i>	A comma-separated list of phone numbers for the respective SMS action group.
<i>E-mail Group 1-4</i>	A comma-separated list of email addresses for the respective E-mail action group.
<i>Script Path 1/2</i>	The absolute path to the user script to be executed for the respective script action (e.g., <code>/var/scripts/my_script.sh</code>).
<i>Temperature Limit</i>	The temperature threshold in degrees Celsius (°C) for the <i>Temperature Reached</i> event.

Table 99: Action definitions

SNMP Settings

This section contains the specific settings for the *SNMP* trap action.

Item	Description
<i>SNMP Manager IPv4 Address</i>	The IP address of the server that will receive the SNMP traps.
<i>SNMP Manager Port</i>	The UDP port on which the SNMP manager is listening. The default is 162.
<i>SNMP Version</i>	The version of the SNMP protocol to use. Version 3 is recommended for enhanced security.
<i>PDU Type</i>	The type of Protocol Data Unit to send. <i>Inform</i> requires an acknowledgment from the manager, while <i>Trap</i> does not.
<i>Community</i>	For SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c only. A password-like credential used to authenticate communications. This string must exactly match the community string configured on the SNMP manager.
<i>Engine ID Payload Type</i>	Determines the source for generating the Engine ID. Options include the <i>ETH0 MAC address</i> , a custom <i>ASCII Text</i> string, or a custom <i>Hexadecimal Value</i> .
<i>Engine ID Payload</i>	If the Payload Type is set to ASCII or Hexadecimal, this field allows you to enter the custom value to be used for the Engine ID.
<i>Engine ID</i>	The final, unique identifier for the SNMP engine on this device, generated based on the settings above. This field is read-only.
<i>Context Name</i>	An identifier used to group related SNMP data, allowing for different logical subsets of managed objects.
<i>Username</i>	The username for SNMPv3 authentication.
<i>Authentication</i>	The hashing algorithm used for SNMPv3 message authentication (e.g., SHA-512).
<i>Authentication Password</i>	The password for SNMPv3 authentication.
<i>Privacy</i>	The encryption algorithm used for SNMPv3 message privacy (e.g., AES).
<i>Privacy Password</i>	The password for SNMPv3 privacy.

Table 100: SNMP settings for events

3.22 Scripts

The router provides several hooks for executing custom shell scripts in response to system and network events. This powerful feature allows for a high degree of automation and customization. The available script types are:

- **Startup Script:** Executed once every time the router boots up.
- **Up/Down IPv4 Scripts:** Executed when the primary IPv4 WAN connection is established or lost.
- **Up/Down IPv6 Scripts:** Executed when the primary IPv6 WAN connection is established or lost.

For detailed information about available commands, refer to the [Command Line Interface](#) Application Note. For broader guidance on customization, see the [Extending Router Functionality](#) Application Note.

3.22.1 Startup

The *Startup Script* is ideal for tasks that need to run once at boot, such as initializing custom services, performing configuration checks, or launching background monitoring processes. The script is entered into the text area on the *Configuration* → *Scripts* page and saved by clicking the *Apply* button.

Warning

Changes to the startup script only take effect after the router is rebooted.

Example

The following script sends an SMS message upon router startup.

```
#!/bin/sh

# Define variables
PhoneNumber="+420123456789"
Message="Router has successfully started up."

# Send the SMS
sms "$PhoneNumber" "$Message"

exit 0
```

3.22.2 Up/Down IPv4

The *Up/Down IPv4* page allows you to define scripts that are triggered by changes in the primary WAN IPv4 connection state. The "Up" script runs when the IPv4 connection is established, and the "Down" script runs when it is lost. Because the router has a dual-stack implementation, scripts for IPv4 and IPv6 are configured and triggered independently.

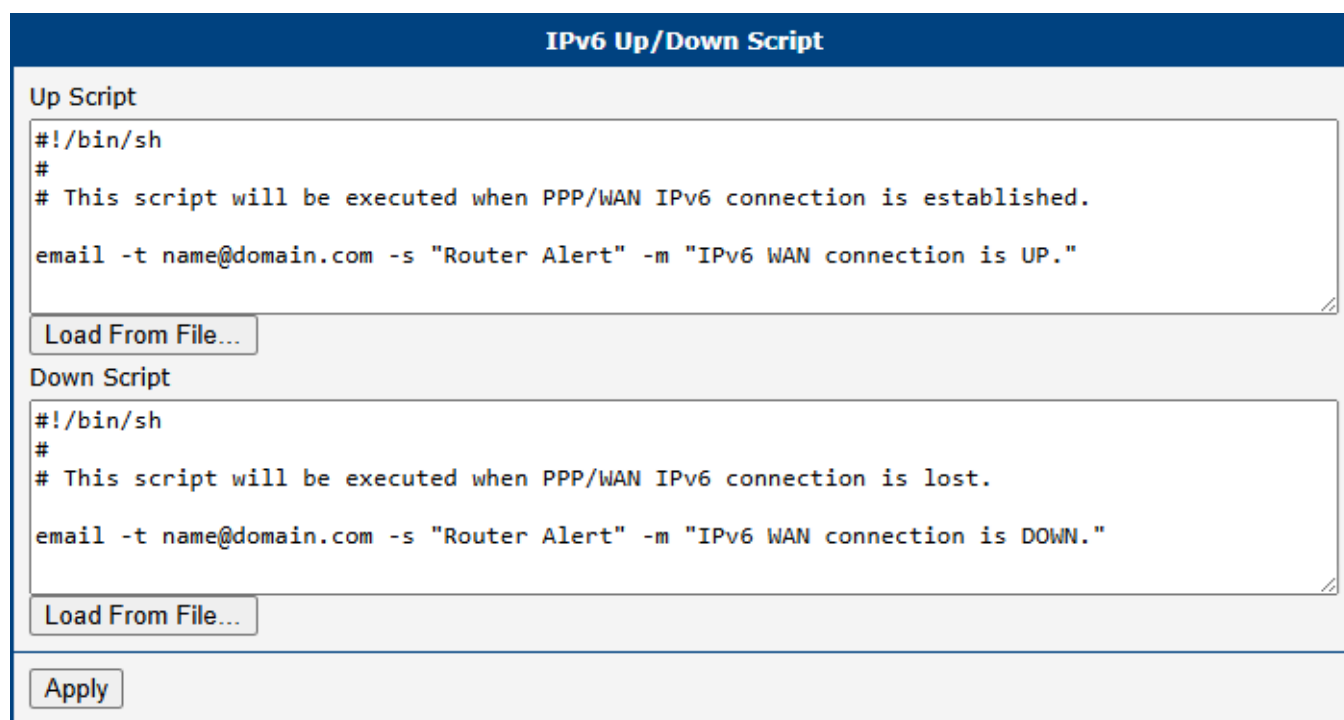
These scripts are passed several arguments that provide context about the connection, such as the interface name and assigned IP address. This allows for dynamic actions based on the current network status.

3.22.3 Up/Down IPv6

The *Up/Down IPv6* page serves a purpose similar to that of the IPv4 page, but it is specifically intended for IPv6 connections.

Example

This example uses the IPv6 Up/Down scripts to send an email notification whenever the IPv6 WAN connection status changes. The *SMTP* service must be configured beforehand.



IPv6 Up/Down Script

Up Script

```
#!/bin/sh
#
# This script will be executed when PPP/WAN IPv6 connection is established.

email -t name@domain.com -s "Router Alert" -m "IPv6 WAN connection is UP."
```

Load From File...

Down Script

```
#!/bin/sh
#
# This script will be executed when PPP/WAN IPv6 connection is lost.

email -t name@domain.com -s "Router Alert" -m "IPv6 WAN connection is DOWN."
```

Load From File...

Apply

Figure 99: IPv6 up/down script configuration page

Up Script:

```
email -t name@domain.com -s "Router Alert" -m "IPv6 WAN connection is UP."
```

Down Script:

```
email -t name@domain.com -s "Router Alert" -m "IPv6 WAN connection is DOWN."
```

Warning

After saving an Up/Down script, the router must be rebooted for the changes to become active.

3.23 Scripts

The router provides several hooks for executing custom shell scripts in response to system and network events. This powerful feature allows for a high degree of automation and customization. The available script types are:

- **Startup Script:** Executed once every time the router boots up.
- **Up/Down IPv4 Scripts:** Executed when the primary IPv4 WAN connection is established or lost.
- **Up/Down IPv6 Scripts:** Executed when the primary IPv6 WAN connection is established or lost.

For detailed information about available commands, refer to the [Command Line Interface](#) Application Note. For broader guidance on customization, see the [Extending Router Functionality](#) Application Note.

3.23.1 Startup

The *Startup Script* is ideal for tasks that need to run once at boot, such as initializing custom services, performing configuration checks, or launching background monitoring processes. The script is entered into the text area on the *Configuration* → *Scripts* page and saved by clicking the *Apply* button.

Warning

Changes to the startup script only take effect after the router is rebooted.

Example

The following script sends an SMS message upon router startup.

```
#!/bin/sh

# Define variables
PhoneNumber="+420123456789"
Message="Router has successfully started up."

# Send the SMS
sms "$PhoneNumber" "$Message"

exit 0
```

3.23.2 Up/Down IPv4

The *Up/Down IPv4* page allows you to define scripts that are triggered by changes in the primary WAN IPv4 connection state. The "Up" script runs when the IPv4 connection is established, and the "Down" script runs when it is lost. Because the router has a dual-stack implementation, scripts for IPv4 and IPv6 are configured and triggered independently.

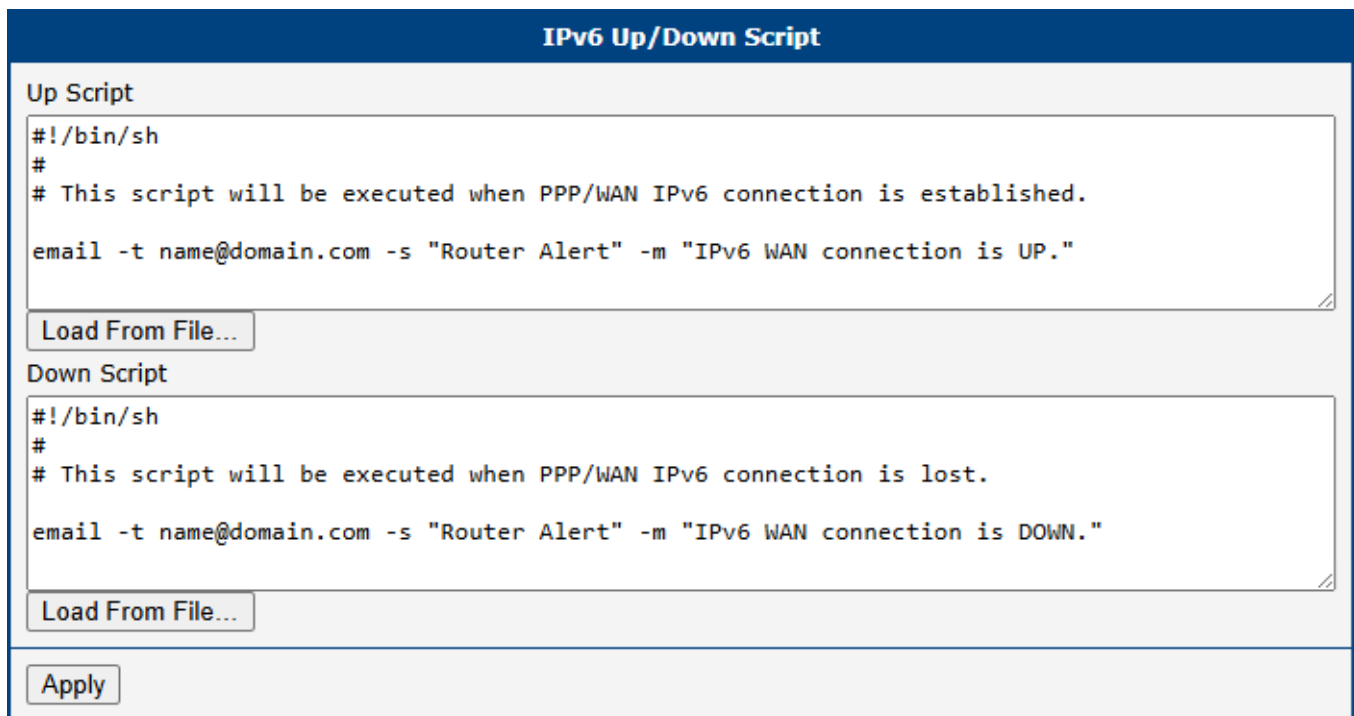
These scripts are passed several arguments that provide context about the connection, such as the interface name and assigned IP address. This allows for dynamic actions based on the current network status.

3.23.3 Up/Down IPv6

The *Up/Down IPv6* page serves a purpose similar to that of the IPv4 page, but it is specifically intended for IPv6 connections.

Example

This example uses the IPv6 Up/Down scripts to send an email notification whenever the IPv6 WAN connection status changes. The *SMTP* service must be configured beforehand.



IPv6 Up/Down Script

Up Script

```
#!/bin/sh
#
# This script will be executed when PPP/WAN IPv6 connection is established.

email -t name@domain.com -s "Router Alert" -m "IPv6 WAN connection is UP."
```

Load From File...

Down Script

```
#!/bin/sh
#
# This script will be executed when PPP/WAN IPv6 connection is lost.

email -t name@domain.com -s "Router Alert" -m "IPv6 WAN connection is DOWN."
```

Load From File...

Apply

Figure 100: IPv6 up/down script configuration page

Up Script:

```
email -t name@domain.com -s "Router Alert" -m "IPv6 WAN connection is UP."
```

Down Script:

```
email -t name@domain.com -s "Router Alert" -m "IPv6 WAN connection is DOWN."
```



Warning

After saving an Up/Down script, the router must be rebooted for the changes to become active.

3.24 Quick Setup

The *Quick Setup* page provides a streamlined, single-page interface that gathers all of the most critical settings for the initial configuration of the router. This page is automatically displayed upon the first login to a new or factory-reset device, but it can also be accessed manually at any time via the *Configuration* → *Quick Setup* menu.

This wizard conveniently consolidates essential settings from various sections of the web interface, allowing you to configure time, LAN, and mobile network settings from a single page.

Quick Setup	
☒ Set current browser time once ☐ Synchronize clock with cellular network ☐ Synchronize clock with GNSS (and enable GNSS service) ☐ Synchronize clock with remote NTP server Primary NTP Server Timezone GMT+01:00	
Country	all countries <i>APs are not allowed to operate in 5 GHz frequency band in world-wide mode.</i>
☒ Enable Port DHCP Client disabled IP Address 192.168.1.1 Subnet Mask 255.255.255.0	
☒ Enable dynamic DHCP leases IP Pool Start 192.168.1.2 IP Pool End 192.168.1.254	
☒ Create connection to mobile network Carrier Outside North America APN * <i>leave blank for automatic selection</i> SIM PIN * <i>using wrong PIN will block your SIM</i>	
☒ Enable WebAccess/DMP Client <i>This router is automatically connected to the Advantech cloud management platform WebAccess/DMP (learn more - link). Decide whether you want to keep this connection to the WebAccess/DMP server located on the public Internet before continuing setup. You can change this setting anytime in the router's web interface (Customization > WebAccess/DMP Client).</i>	
☐ Reset other settings to defaults and reboot	
* can be blank Apply	

Figure 101: Quick Setup page

Time and Region

For a complete overview of these settings, refer to Chapter [5.4 Set Date and Time](#), Chapter [3.18.6 NTP](#), and Chapter [3.6.3 Country](#).

Item	Description
<i>Set current browser time once</i>	A one-time action that sets the router's system time to match the time of your web browser.
<i>Synchronize clock with...</i>	Selects the method for automatic time synchronization. Note that synchronization via GNSS is only available on router models equipped with a GNSS module.
<i>Primary NTP Server</i>	The address of the NTP server to be used when <i>Synchronize clock with remote NTP server</i> is selected.
<i>Timezone</i>	Sets the local timezone for the router.
<i>Country</i>	For models equipped with Wi-Fi, this setting configures the regulatory domain. It is crucial to select the country of operation to ensure compliance with local radio frequency regulations, as this affects which Wi-Fi channels are available.

Table 101: Quick Setup: Time and Region

LAN Port and DHCP Server

The full configuration options for the LAN interface are described in Chapter [3.1 Ethernet](#).

Item	Description
<i>Enable Port</i>	Enables or disables the primary LAN port (eth0).
<i>DHCP Client</i>	If enabled, the router's LAN port will request an IP address from another DHCP server on the network.
<i>IP Address</i>	The static IPv4 address assigned to the router's primary LAN interface.
<i>Subnet Mask</i>	The subnet mask for the primary LAN interface.
<i>Enable dynamic DHCP leases</i>	Enables the router's built-in DHCP server, which automatically assigns IPv4 addresses to client devices on the LAN.
<i>IP Pool Start</i>	The starting address of the IP range that the DHCP server will lease to clients.
<i>IP Pool End</i>	The ending address of the IP range that the DHCP server will lease to clients.

Table 102: Quick Setup: LAN Port and DHCP Server

Mobile Network

Info

This section is only available on cellular router models.

The complete configuration for the mobile network is available in Chapter [3.4 Mobile WAN](#).

Item	Description
<i>Create connection to mobile network</i>	When checked, the router will automatically attempt to connect to the mobile network after booting.
<i>Carrier</i>	Allows for the selection of a pre-defined profile for a specific mobile carrier (e.g., for North American operators).
<i>APN</i>	The Access Point Name for your mobile network data plan. In many cases, this can be left blank to allow for automatic selection by the carrier.
<i>SIM PIN</i>	The PIN for your SIM card. Entering an incorrect PIN multiple times may permanently block the SIM card.

Table 103: Quick Setup: Mobile Network

System and Service Settings

Item	Description
<i>Enable WebAccess/DMP Client</i>	Enables or disables the client for the WebAccess/DMP remote management platform. For complete details, see Chapter 1.2.2 Remote Management Platform .
<i>Reset other settings to defaults and reboot</i>	If checked, any settings not present on this Quick Setup page will be reset to their factory defaults when the new configuration is applied.

Table 104: Quick Setup: System and Service Settings

4. Customization

4.1 Router Apps

Router Apps (RA), formerly known as User Modules, are custom software packages that extend the router's capabilities in areas such as security, advanced networking, and custom services.

A wide variety of Router Apps are available for free on the Advantech [Router Apps webpage](#).

Info

- Users with the *Admin* role can install, manage, and view Router Apps. Users with the *User* role can only view the list of installed apps.
- To quickly check the operational state of all installed modules without entering their configuration, navigate to the *Status* → *Router Apps* page.

Overview of the Router Apps Page

To manage apps, navigate to the *Customization* → *Router Apps* page. The page is divided into three main areas:

- **Installed Apps:** Lists all Router Apps currently installed on the device.
- **Manual Installation:** Allows for uploading and installing an app package from your computer.
- **Online Installation:** Allows for downloading and installing apps directly from a server.

The *File Extension* indicator shows the file name extension required for app packages on the router platform, and the *Free Space* indicator shows how much storage is available for new applications.

The screenshot shows the 'Router Apps' page. It has a dark blue header with the title 'Router Apps'. Below the header, there are three main sections: 'Installed Apps', 'Manual Installation', and 'Online Installation'. The 'Installed Apps' section shows 'No Router Apps installed.' The 'Manual Installation' section has a 'New Router App' label, a 'Choose File' button (which is disabled and shows 'No file chosen'), and an 'Add or Update' button. Below these buttons, it shows 'File Extension : .v3.tgz' and 'Free Space : 125.0 MiB'. The 'Online Installation' section has a 'Load Available Apps' button.

Figure 102: Default Router Apps page (the File Extension and Free Space values depend on the router model)

Installation and Management

Manual Installation

To install a Router App manually, click the *Choose File* button in the *Manual Installation* section to select the app package from your computer. The package must be a `*.tgz` file. Click the *Add or Update* button to begin the installation.

Online Installation

To install apps from a server, first click the *Load Available Apps* button in the *Online Installation* section. This action fetches and displays a list of all applications available on the configured server.

- An active internet connection with functional DNS name resolution is required to perform this action. Without DNS, the router cannot find the server, which will result in a `Couldn't resolve host name` error.
- By default, the router is configured to use the public Advantech server. A custom server can be specified on the *Settings* page (see Chapter 4.2 *Settings*). Note that the *Load Available Apps* button is disabled if communication with the server is deactivated in the settings.
- The list of available apps is not stored permanently; it is cleared when the router reboots and must be reloaded. The timestamp of the last successful list update is shown next to the button.
- This online installation feature requires firmware version 6.4.0 or newer and is not available on v2 platform routers.

The screenshot displays the 'Router Apps' interface. At the top, there's a section for 'Installed Apps' showing 'Customer Logo v1.0.0 (2020-01-31)' with a 'Delete' button. Below this is the 'Manual Installation' section, which includes a 'New Router App' area with a 'Choose File' button (showing 'No file chosen') and an 'Add or Update' button. It also shows 'Free Space: 708 MiB'. The 'Online Installation' section features a 'Reload Available Apps' button and a timestamp 'Last check 2024-01-15 10:39:55'. A list of available apps follows, each with a name, version dropdown, 'Install' button, and description:

App Name	Version	Action	Description
802.1X Authenticator	1.1.0	Install	802.1X network authentication standard for devices on LAN/WLAN.
Azure IoT SDK Python	1.0.0	Install	Add Microsoft Azure IoT Hub Device SDK for Python to router [Obsolete version].
Customer Logo	v1.0.0 1.1.0	Install	Allow users to change the logo displayed in the header of the web interface
Unique Password	1.0.2	Install	unique. From January 2020, this is required by California Senate Bill No. 327. The format used is 'ph'
WebAccess/VPN Client	1.1.3	Install	This user module allows the router to be part of WebAccess/VPN.
WiFi STA Relay	1.3.0	Install	Set the router to transparent mode (WiFi interface in client mode bridged to ETH). [Limited to specific router models]
Zabbix Agent	5.0.3-1	Install	Agent for Zabbix network monitoring platform.

Figure 103: Router Apps page with online apps loaded

Managing Installed Apps

All installed apps are listed in the *Installed Apps* section.

- **Accessing an App GUI:** If an app has a web interface, its name will be a clickable link that opens the app's GUI.
- **Removing an App:** To uninstall an app, click the corresponding *Delete* button.

Info

For information on creating your own Router Apps, please refer to the *Extending Router Functionality* Application Note [2].

4.2 Settings

To configure the server connection for online installation, navigate to *Customization* → *Router Apps* → *Settings*.

Figure 104: Router Apps server settings

Item	Description
<i>Disable server communication</i>	Check this to disable all communication with the online app server.
<i>Use public server</i>	The default option. Uses the official Advantech server to download Router Apps. Requires an active internet connection.
<i>Use custom server</i>	Connect to a private, self-hosted server. This requires an on-premises installation of Advantech's <i>WebAccess/DMP</i> software.
<i>API URL</i>	The URL of your custom server. Must begin with <code>https://</code> .
<i>CA certificate</i>	Upload a CA certificate for your custom server if it uses a private or non-standard Certificate Authority.

Table 105: Router Apps server settings descriptions

5. Administration

5.1 Manage Users

This chapter provides a comprehensive guide to user management on the router. It explains the differences between user roles and details how to create, modify, and delete accounts. Additionally, it covers the configuration of advanced security features such as Two-Factor Authentication (2FA) and passwordless SSH login.

The primary administration page is *Administration → Manage Users*, which is fully accessible to users with the *Admin* role. Users with the standard *User* role have restricted access and can only modify their own settings via the separate *Administration → Modify User* page; refer to Chapter [5.2 Modify User](#).

5.1.1 Managing User Accounts

Warning

Be careful not to lock out or delete all users with the *Admin* role. If this happens, no user will have the necessary permissions to manage accounts, and a factory reset may be required.

Info

- The main *Manage Users* page is only accessible to users with the *Admin* role.
- For global authentication settings, such as enabling 2FA services and setting password complexity rules, see Chapter [3.20.1 Authentication](#).

The *Manage Users* page is the central hub for creating, modifying, and deleting user accounts on the router. In Figure 105, you can see that there are two existing users, `root` and `Alice`, and we are about to add a new user named `John` with the *Admin* role.

Manage Users

root

Admin

Lock

Modify

Alice

User

Lock

Modify

Delete

Role

Admin

▼

Username

John

New Password

.....

👁

- Must be at least 6 characters long
- Must not be palindrome
- Must not contain username

Confirm Password

.....

👁

SSH Public Key *

ssh-rsa

AAAAB3NzaC1yc2EAAAADAQABAAQCMNgYZU504EkVocFQZJJDbmUwe4WbcCIe3

aXaEtz

1VsdJN

97vKRA

1JMVtmT

2btXAa3

zJzdzIz

Load From File...

Phone Number *

+15551234567

Email Address *

address@email.com

Add User

Figure 105: Manage Users configuration page

User Roles and Permissions

The router supports two primary user roles, each with a different level of permissions:

- **User Role:** Intended for basic monitoring. Users with this role have read-only access to most of the web interface and cannot make configuration changes (except for modifying their own account). Console access is disabled.
- **Admin Role:** Intended for full device management. Administrators have full read-write access to the entire web interface and can log in via the console. However, this is not equivalent to the root superuser on a standard Linux system.

Info

In addition to the primary roles, the system includes a highly restricted **Operator Role**. Users with this role can only log in and change their own password, with no other capabilities or access to the web interface. This role is intended solely for special-purpose Router Apps and future high-granularity access rights configurations.

5.1.2 Adding, Modifying, and Deleting Users

The main part of the page lists all existing users. For each user, you have three available actions:

Button	Description
Lock	Temporarily disables the user account, preventing login via both the web interface and the console.
Modify	Opens the <i>Modify User</i> page, allowing you to change the password, update contact information, or manage security settings like the SSH public key and 2FA; refer to Chapter 5.2 Modify User .
Delete	Permanently removes the user account from the router.

Table 106: User action buttons

To create a new account, fill out the form, as shown in Figure [105](#) for a new user `John`, and click the *Add User* button.

Item	Description
<i>Role</i>	Assigns the user role. Available options are <i>Admin</i> , <i>User</i> , and the highly restricted <i>Operator</i> role.
<i>Username</i>	The name for the new user account.
<i>New Password</i>	Sets the password for the user. It must always comply with the rules defined by the <i>Force Password Complexity</i> setting (see Chapter 3.20.1 Authentication). When changing a password for an existing user, the new password is checked against the most recent old password and must meet the following additional requirements: • Character Difference: The new password must differ from the old one by a minimum number of characters: ◦ At least 1 new or different character for the <i>Very Weak</i> and <i>Weak</i> levels. ◦ At least 5 new or different characters for the <i>Good</i> and <i>Strong</i> levels. • No Trivial Variations: The new password cannot be a simple variation of the old one. Specifically, the following are not allowed: ◦ Changing only the case of letters. ◦ Cyclically shifting the characters.

Table 107: New user parameters

Item	Description
<i>Confirm Password</i>	Re-enter the new password to confirm it. This helps prevent typos.
<i>SSH Public Key</i>	Paste a public SSH key here to enable passwordless console login for this user. The maximum supported size is 32 KiB. See for a detailed guide .
<i>Phone Number</i>	The user's mobile phone number. If provided, an SMS notification will be sent to this number whenever the user's password is changed. Note: This feature is only available on cellular router models.
<i>Email Address</i>	The user's email address. If provided, an email notification will be sent to this address whenever the user's password is changed. Note: This feature requires a functional SMTP server configuration, as detailed in Chapter 3.18.7 SMTP .

Table 107: New user parameters (continued)

5.1.3 Two-Factor Authentication (2FA)

Two-Factor Authentication adds a critical layer of security by requiring a time-sensitive verification code from an authenticator app in addition to a password.

Important

- **Correct Time is Crucial:** 2FA is time-based. Ensure the router's clock is always accurate by enabling the NTP client. See Chapter [3.18.6 NTP](#).
- **Risk of Lockout:** An incorrect 2FA setup can lock you out of your account. It is highly recommended to have a separate admin account without 2FA as a backup during the setup process.
- **Secret Key is Vital:** Without the secret key, you cannot complete the setup or log in. A user with the *Admin* role can view another user's secret key using the *Show* button, or delete it; only generating or uploading a new secret key is restricted to the account owner.
- **Secret Key Deletion:** If a user is unable to log in using 2FA for any reason, a user with the *Admin* role can delete their *Secret Key*, thereby disabling 2FA login for that user.

Configuration Steps

1. **Enable 2FA Service Globally:** Go to *Configuration* → *System* → *Authentication* and enable either *Google Authenticator* or *OATH* as the 2FA login service; refer to Chapter [3.20.1 Authentication](#). This selects the type of 2FA service, which is common for all users on the router. However, for 2FA login to be applied to a specific user, that user must set up their *Secret Key* as described in the next step.
2. **Generate and Save Secret Key:** The *Secret Key* must be configured by each user individually after logging in to the router. A user with the *Admin* role can only delete another user's *Secret Key* but cannot generate or edit it. On the *Modify User* page, in the *Two-Factor Auth* section, select *Generate a new secret key*, click the *Apply* button, and the key will be generated. You can also upload a key from a file containing the pure text of the key. Ensure the key length is sufficient (for example, 26 characters) and do not forget to click the *Apply* button once the key file is chosen.
3. **Link to Authenticator App:** Open your authenticator app (e.g., [Google Authenticator](#), [Authy](#)) and add a new account by scanning the QR code shown in the *Two-Factor Auth* section or by manually inputting the secret code, which can be revealed by clicking the *Show* button.

Login Procedure

With 2FA enabled, the login process has an extra step:

- **Web Interface:** After entering your username and password, you will be prompted for a *Verification Code*. Open your authenticator app to get the current code and enter it to complete the login.
- **Console Access:** The console will prompt you for your username, password, and verification code sequentially.

5.1.4 Passwordless Console Login via SSH Key

This method allows you to log in to the router's SSH console using a cryptographic key pair instead of a password. The following guide uses the PuTTY client for Windows.

Prerequisites

From the official [PuTTY download page](#), download `putty.exe` (the terminal client), `puttygen.exe` (the key generator), and `pageant.exe` (an authentication agent).

Generating the Key Pair

1. Run `puttygen.exe`.
2. Ensure *RSA* is selected as the key type and click *Generate*.
3. Move your mouse randomly over the blank area to generate randomness for the key.
4. Once complete, click *Save public key* and *Save private key*. Save them to a secure location on your computer. Do not use a passphrase for simplicity in this guide.
5. Keep the PuTTY Key Generator window open.

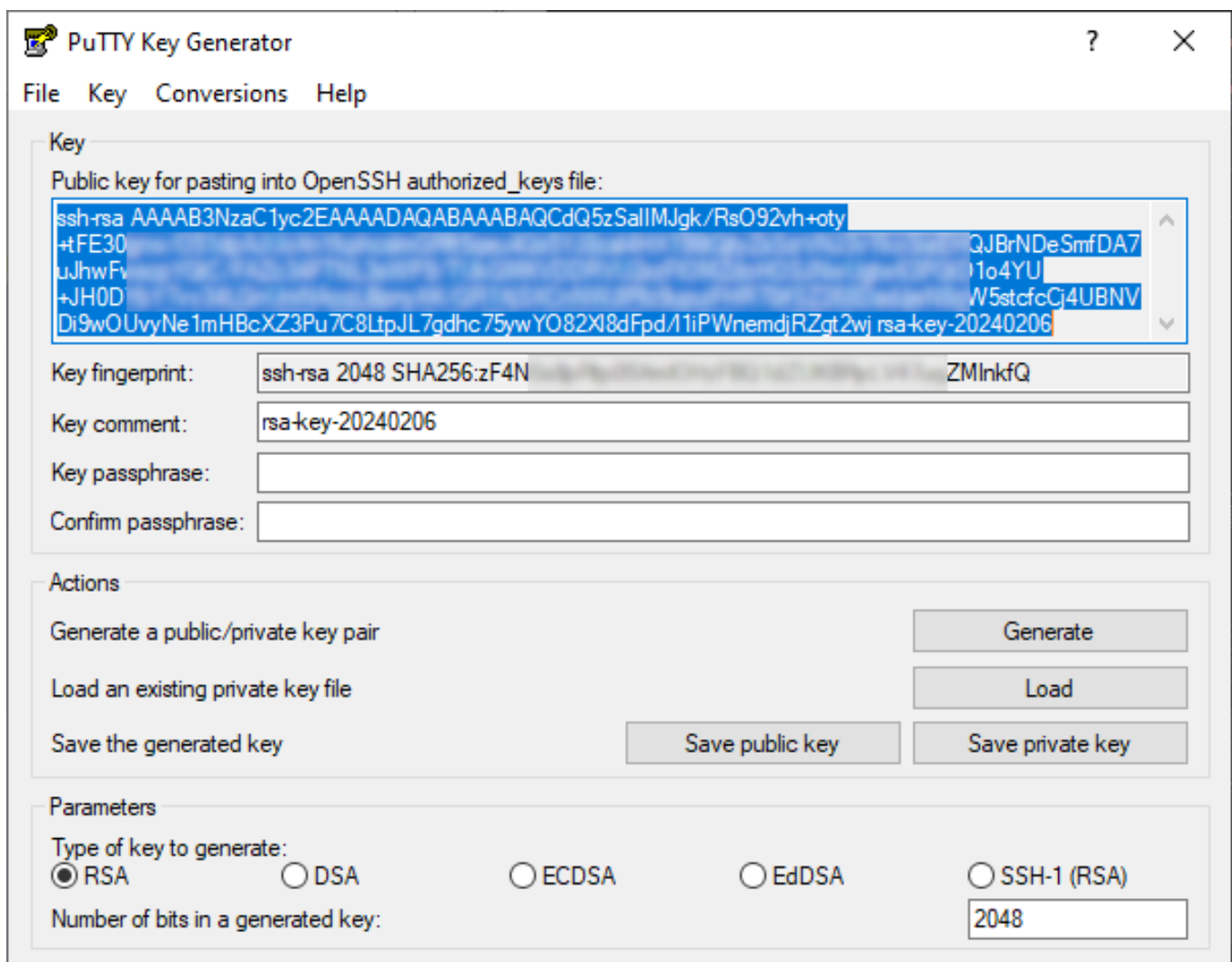


Figure 106: Generating an RSA key pair with PuTTYgen

Uploading the Public Key to the Router

1. In the PuTTY Key Generator window, copy the entire text from the box labeled *Public key for pasting into OpenSSH authorized_keys file*.
2. In the router's web interface, navigate to *Administration* → *Manage Users* and click *Modify* for the desired *Admin*-level user.
3. Paste the copied key into the *SSH Public key* field and click *Apply*.

Warning

The key must be in the correct one-line format, typically starting with `ssh-rsa`. Copying the key directly from the `.pub` file may not work. It is safest to copy it from the PuTTYgen window.

Configuring the PuTTY Session

1. Run `putty.exe`.
2. In the *Session* category, enter the router's IP address.
3. Navigate to *Connection* → *Data* and enter the username in the *Auto-login username* field.
4. Navigate to *Connection* → *SSH* → *Auth* → *Credentials* and browse for your saved private key file.
5. Return to the *Session* category, give the session a name, and click *Save*.

To connect, simply load the saved session and click *Open*. You will be logged in automatically without a password prompt.

5.1.5 Forced Password Change

In certain situations, the router will require a user to change their password immediately upon the next login. This occurs:

- When logging in for the very first time after a factory reset.
- When a user's password has expired (configured in *Authentication* settings).
- When an administrator has manually changed another user's password.

The new password must adhere to the complexity requirements configured on the *Configuration* → *System* → *Authentication* page.

Figure 107: Forced password change prompt

5.2 Modify User

Info

The *Administration* → *Modify User* page is only accessible to users with the *User* role.

The *Administration* → *Modify User* page allows users to edit their own configuration settings. While a standard user is restricted to this page, a user with the *Admin* role can modify all user accounts via the *Administration* → *Manage Users* page, as described in Chapter 5.1 *Manage Users*.

Figure 108 shows an example of the *Administration* → *Modify User* configuration page, illustrating a case where a user with the *User* role is logged in to the router and does not have access to the *Administration* → *Manage Users* configuration page.

Modify User

Username:

Current Password:

New Password:

Confirm Password:

- Must be at least 6 characters long
- Must not be palindrome
- Must not contain username
- Must be at least 1 character different from the old password
- Must not be a rotated old password
- Must not be an old password with case changes only

SSH Public Key *

Load From File...

Phone Number *:

Email Address *:

Two-Factor Auth: (TFA is enabled/disabled via System/Authentication)

Secret Key: Show

☒ Keep the current secret key

☐ Delete the secret key

☐ Generate a new secret key

☐ Upload a new secret key

Secret Key File: No file chosen

Apply

Figure 108: Modify User configuration page

Most items in Figure 108 are already described in Chapter 5.1 *Manage Users*. If the user wants to change their password, they must enter their original password into the *Current Password* field. The *SSH Public Key* field is disabled here because users with the *User* role are not permitted to log in via the console. In addition to the password, the user can also change their phone number and email address. In the last section of the screen, the user can modify their Two-Factor Authentication settings; for details, see Chapter .

5.3 Change Profile

Advantech routers allow you to store up to four complete sets of configurations, known as profiles: one *Standard Profile* and three *Alternative Profiles* (alt1, alt2, alt3). This feature is particularly useful for switching between different operational modes, such as changing mobile provider settings, activating different VPN tunnels, or modifying firewall rules based on location or time.

Change Profile

Profile

Standard

☐ Copy settings from current profile to selected profile

Apply

Figure 109: Change profile page

Managing Profiles

The *Administration* → *Change Profile* page lets you switch the router’s active profile and, optionally, copy the current running configuration into the newly selected profile at the same time.

Item	Description
Profile	Chooses the configuration profile that the router will load and use after the next reboot.
Copy settings from current profile to selected profile	When this box is checked, clicking <i>Apply</i> additionally copies the router’s current running configuration into the profile selected above. Selecting a different profile in the <i>Profile</i> field always switches the router to it on the next reboot, regardless of this checkbox — there is no way to copy settings into a profile without also switching to it.

Table 108: Profile management options



Warning

Any change made on this page, whether switching a profile or saving one, takes effect only after the router is rebooted.

Methods for Switching Profiles

You can switch the active profile using several methods:

- **Web Interface:** Select the desired profile from the *Select profile to switch to* dropdown and click *Apply*. Then, reboot the router.
- **SMS Command:** Send an SMS with the text `set profile [std|alt1|alt2|alt3]` to the router. This change is permanent and will be used after the next reboot. This is configured on the *Configuration* → *Services* → *SMS* page.

5.4 Set Date and Time

Warning

This page is for a **one-time manual setting** of the router's clock. For continuous time synchronization, you must configure the NTP client. See Chapter [3.18.6 NTP](#) for details.

Info

Please note that some of the options described below may not be available on all router models.

This page offers several methods for setting the system date and time.

Set Date and Time	
☒	Set current browser time
☐	Set specific date / time
Date	2025 - 12 - 16
Time	11 : 33 : 17
☐	Query cellular module
☐	Query GNSS module
☐	Query NTP server
NTP Server Address	pool.ntp.org
Apply	

Figure 110: Set date and time page

1. **Set current browser time:** Synchronizes the router's clock with the time on your computer.
2. **Set specific date/time:** Allows you to manually enter a specific date and time. Use the format yyyy-mm-dd for the date and HH:MM:SS for the time.
3. **Query cellular module:** Retrieves the time from the mobile network using the NITZ standard. This requires an active cellular connection and support from both the mobile operator and the router's cellular module.
4. **Query GNSS module:** On routers equipped with a GNSS module, this option sets the time based on satellite data. The GNSS receiver must be enabled and have a valid position fix.
5. **Query NTP server:** Performs a one-time synchronization with a specified NTP server. You can enter the server's IP address (IPv4 or IPv6) or its domain name.

5.5 Manage SIM

The *Administration* → *Manage SIM* menu provides tools for managing the security and settings of your SIM cards.

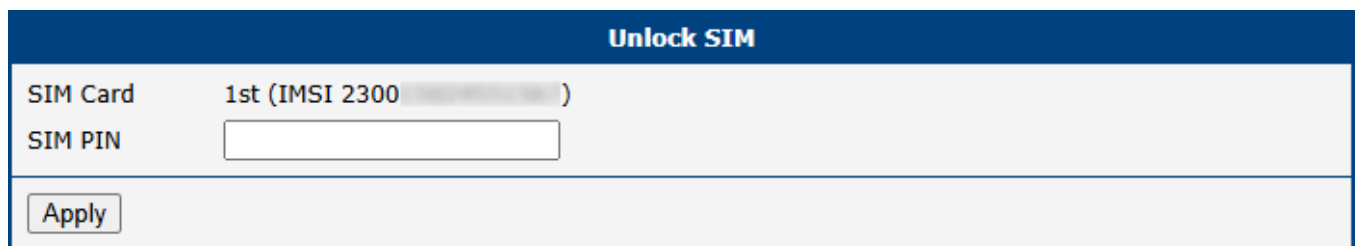
5.5.1 Unlock SIM

If your SIM card is protected by a Personal Identification Number (PIN), you must first enter it on the *Mobile WAN* configuration page to establish a connection. This page, however, allows you to permanently remove the PIN protection from the SIM card so it will no longer be required upon startup.

To remove the PIN, navigate to *Administration* → *Manage SIM* → *Unlock SIM*. The page displays the *SIM Card* (1st or 2nd) that is currently active within the system, along with its unique IMSI number. This ensures you are unlocking the correct card. Note that this operation can only be performed on a SIM card that is currently detected by the system. To proceed, enter the correct 4–8 digit PIN into the *SIM PIN* field and click *Apply*.

Warning

The SIM card will be blocked after three incorrect PIN entry attempts. To unblock it, you will need the PUK code, as described in the next chapter.



Unlock SIM	
SIM Card	1st (IMSI 2300 [redacted])
SIM PIN	
Apply	

Figure 111: Unlock SIM page

5.5.2 Unblock SIM

This page allows you to unblock a SIM card that has been locked due to three incorrect PIN attempts. You can also use this page to set a new PIN by utilizing the PUK code.

To unblock the card, navigate to *Administration* → *Manage SIM* → *Unblock SIM*. The page displays the *SIM Card* (1st or 2nd) that is currently active within the system, along with its unique IMSI number. This ensures you are unblocking the correct card. Note that this operation can only be performed on a SIM card that is currently detected by the system.

To proceed, enter the PUK (Personal Unblocking Key) code provided by your carrier into the *SIM PUK* field, and specify your desired new PIN in the *New SIM PIN* field. Click *Apply* to confirm the changes.



Warning

The SIM card will be permanently blocked if the PUK code is entered incorrectly too many times (typically ten attempts).

Unblock SIM

SIM Card

1st (IMSI 2300)

SIM PUK

New SIM PIN

Apply

Figure 112: Unblock SIM page

5.5.3 Set SMS Center

This page allows you to manually set the phone number for the SMS Service Center (SMSC), which is essential for sending SMS messages from the router. To access this page, navigate to *Administration* → *Manage SIM* → *Set SMS Center*.

The currently configured SMSC number can be viewed at any time on the *Status* → *Mobile WAN* page (see Chapter [2.2 Mobile WAN](#)).

Info

In most cases, the SMSC number is automatically provisioned by the SIM card, and you do not need to change this setting. You should only set this value manually if you are experiencing issues sending SMS messages and your mobile network operator has provided a specific number to use. The number can be entered in a local format or with a full international prefix (e.g., +420123456789).

Set SMS Center	
SIM Card	1st (IMSI 2300)
Current Value	+420
Service Center Address	
Apply	

Figure 113: Set SMS service center page

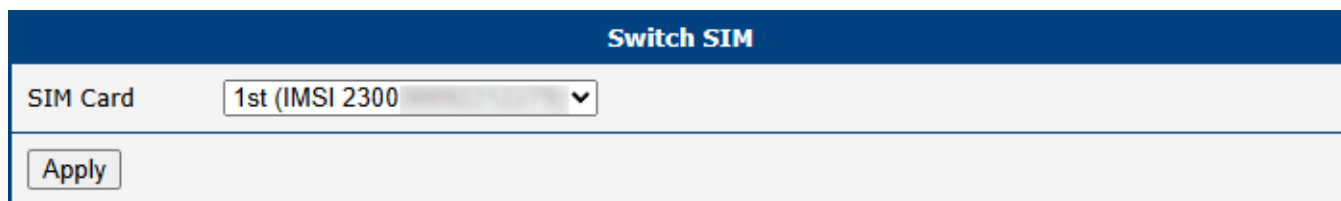
5.5.4 Switch SIM

The *Switch SIM* page allows for manual switching between SIM cards. This is primarily used for maintenance or testing purposes to force the router to a specific SIM slot, bypassing the automatic selection logic temporarily.

Info

To enable manual SIM switching, you must first deactivate the mobile connection. Navigate to *Configuration* → *Mobile WAN* and uncheck the *Create connection to mobile network* checkbox. If this is not done, the *SIM Card* selection will be disabled with a message “*Disable connection to mobile network first*” displayed.

To switch the active SIM card, navigate to *Administration* → *Manage SIM* → *Switch SIM*.



Switch SIM	
SIM Card	1st (IMSI 2300) ▼
Apply	

Figure 114: Switch SIM page

Select the desired SIM card from the *SIM Card* drop-down list and click *Apply*. Each option includes the slot number, and the currently active slot's entry also shows its IMSI for precise identification.

Warning

The manual selection made on this page is temporary. Once you re-enable the mobile connection in *Configuration* → *Mobile WAN*, the router will automatically select the active SIM card based on the rules and priorities defined in the *Mobile WAN* configuration, potentially overriding your manual selection.

5.6 Send SMS

You can send an SMS message directly from the router to test cellular functionality or send a quick notification. To do so, use the *Send SMS* dialog in the *Administration* menu.

Enter the recipient's *Phone number*, type your message in the *Message* field, and click *Send*. By default, the router limits SMS messages to 160 characters. To send longer messages, you must install the [PDU SMS Router App](#).

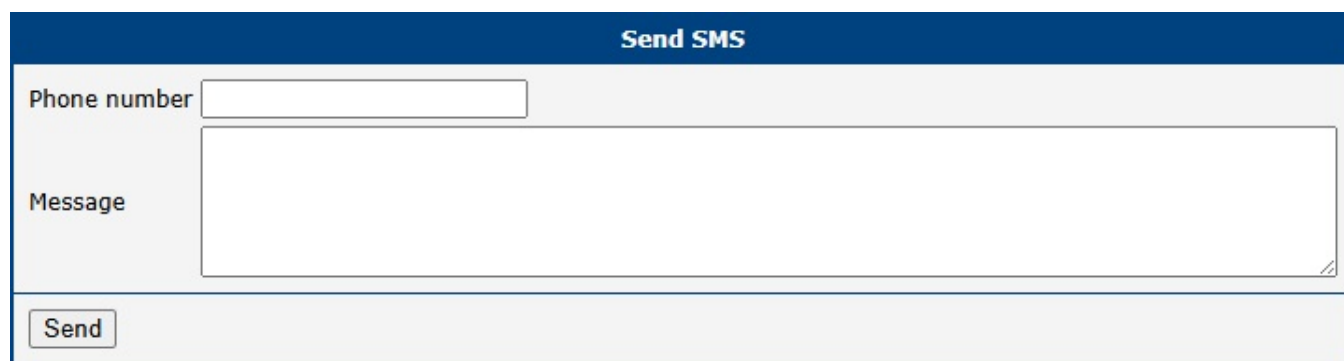
The image shows a web-based dialog box titled "Send SMS" with a dark blue header. The dialog has a light gray background. It contains two main input fields: "Phone number" with a small text box, and "Message" with a larger text area. Below these fields is a "Send" button. The dialog is framed by a dark blue border.

Figure 115: Send SMS dialog

It is also possible to send SMS messages programmatically via a CGI script. For detailed instructions, please refer to the [Command Line Interface](#) application note.

5.7 Backup Configuration

The *Administration* → *Backup Configuration* page allows you to save the router’s current configuration settings to a file. This backup file can be used later to restore the router to a previous state or to clone the configuration to other devices.

Backup Configuration

☒ Backup configuration

☐ Backup users

Encryption Password *

* can be blank

Save Backup

Figure 116: Backup configuration page

Item	Description
Backup Configuration	When checked, the backup will include all router configuration settings.
Backup Users	When checked, the backup will include all user accounts and their passwords.
Encryption Password	If you set a password here, the backup file will be encrypted. If left blank, the file will be saved unencrypted.

Table 109: Backup configuration items



Warning

Configuration backups can contain sensitive information, including user credentials. It is **strongly recommended** to always set an encryption password to protect the backup file. Also, ensure you are downloading the backup file over a secure (HTTPS) connection.

After selecting the desired options, click the *Apply* button. Your web browser will then prompt you to save the configuration file (with a .cfg extension). For instructions on how to use this file, see Chapter [5.8 Restore Configuration](#).

5.8 Restore Configuration

The *Restore Configuration* menu contains options for reverting the router’s settings to a previous state or resetting them entirely. It is divided into two sub-menus: *Restore from File* and *Factory Reset*.

5.8.1 Restore from File

This page allows you to restore the router’s settings from a previously created backup file. For instructions on creating a backup, please see Chapter [5.7 Backup Configuration](#).

To restore a configuration, navigate to *Administration* → *Restore Configuration* → *Restore from File*. Click the *Choose File* button to select the .cfg backup file from your computer. If the file is encrypted, you must provide the correct password in the *Decryption Password* field. Clicking the *Apply* button will upload the file and apply the settings. The router does not reboot automatically — you must click the reboot link shown on the confirmation page for the new configuration to take effect.

Restore from File

Configuration File

Choose File

No file chosen

Decryption Password *

* can be blank

Apply

Figure 117: Restore from file page



Warning

Restoring a configuration from firmware older than version 6.2.0 is not supported. While upgrading the firmware from an older version is possible, attempting to restore a configuration file from such versions will result in some settings being reset to their factory defaults.

Item	Description
Configuration File	Select the .cfg backup file from your local computer.
Decryption Password	The password required to decrypt an encrypted backup file. Leave blank if the file is not encrypted.

Table 110: Restore from file options

5.8.2 Factory Reset



Warning

Factory reset is a destructive action that completely erases all configuration and restores the router to its original factory state. **This action is irreversible and should be used with extreme caution.**

Key consequences of performing a factory reset include:

- All custom configurations (including network, VPN, and firewall rules) will be permanently deleted.
- All user accounts will be erased, leaving only the default administrator account.
- The router’s LAN IP address will revert to its factory default (typically `192.168.1.1`), which will likely disconnect you from the web interface.

This software reset is equivalent to a hardware factory reset using the **RST** button, as detailed in Chapter [1.3.2 Reset Procedures](#).

To reset the router to its default factory settings, navigate to *Administration* → *Restore Configuration* → *Factory Reset*.

Clicking the *Reset and Reboot* button will erase all custom configurations, apply the factory default settings, and automatically restart the device. The reboot process typically takes about 30 seconds to complete.

Factory Reset

Router will apply its factory configuration and reboot. The reboot process will take about 30 seconds to complete.

Reset and Reboot

Figure 118: Factory reset page

5.9 Update Firmware

Keeping your router’s firmware up to date is crucial for security and access to the latest features. This page allows you to view the current firmware version and perform updates.



Info

The latest official firmware for your router is always available on the Advantech Engineering Portal at icr.advantech.com/download/routers-firmware.



Warning

- For security reasons, always use the latest firmware version. Do not downgrade to a version older than the one the router was manufactured with, and never upload firmware designed for a different router model, as this can cause irreversible damage.
- Do not turn off or disconnect the router from power during the firmware update process. Doing so may brick the device. The update may take several minutes to complete.
- Firmware updates can occasionally affect Router App compatibility. It is recommended to update all Router Apps at the same time as the firmware.
- If you are using an unsecured HTTP connection, some firewalls may block the firmware upload. In such cases, switch to HTTPS or contact your network administrator.

The *Administration* → *Update Firmware* page is divided into sections for viewing the current version and performing manual or online updates.

Update Firmware	
Firmware Version	: 6.3.9 (2023-01-04)
Firmware Name	: ICR-445x.bin
New Firmware	Choose File No file chosen Update
Check for updates Last check 2025-12-16 11:46:58 Newest FW online 6.5.4	

Figure 119: Update firmware administration page

Item	Description
Current Version	
<i>Firmware Version</i>	The version number and release date of the currently installed firmware.
<i>Firmware Name</i>	The name of the firmware file currently running on the router.
Manual Update	
<i>New Firmware</i>	Allows you to manually upload a firmware file from your computer using the <i>Choose File</i> button.
<i>Update</i>	Starts the update process using the selected file.
Online Update	
<i>Check for updates</i>	Connects to the public server to check if a newer firmware version is available. The timestamp of the last check is displayed.
<i>Download and Update</i>	This button appears if a newer version is found. Clicking it will automatically download the new firmware and initiate the update process.

Table 111: Update firmware page items

During the update, the router will display its progress, as shown in Figure 120. Once the update is finished, the router will automatically reboot. After it comes back online, click the provided *here* link to return to the web interface.

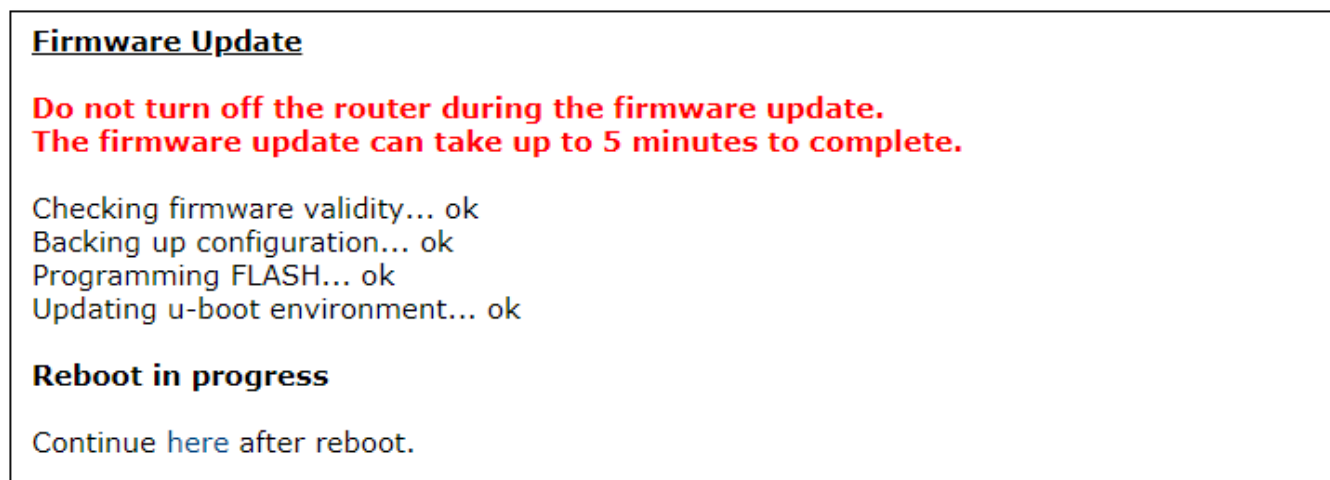


Figure 120: Firmware update in progress

5.10 Reboot

The *Reboot* menu provides two different options to restart or schedule automatic restarts of the router. To access these options, select the *Reboot* item in the *Administration* menu.



Info

- Starting with firmware version 6.6.0, this functionality is integrated directly into the router’s base firmware and replaces the legacy *Daily Reboot* Router App.
- To prevent conflicts, you must disable or uninstall the legacy Router App before using the integrated firmware feature.

5.10.1 Reboot Now

This submenu allows you to immediately reboot the router by clicking the *Reboot* button. A standard reboot takes approximately 30 seconds to complete.

Reboot Now
The reboot process will take about 30 seconds to complete.
Reboot

Figure 121: Reboot Now Submenu

5.10.2 Reboot Schedule

The *Reboot Schedule* submenu allows scheduled, automatic restarting of the router. The following parameters can be configured:

Item	Description
<i>Enable scheduled reboot</i>	Activates or deactivates periodic router restarts according to the selected schedule.
<i>Week Days</i>	Select specific days of the week (Monday–Sunday) for scheduled reboot. Multiple days can be selected.
<i>Time</i>	Set the exact time for the reboot to occur on chosen days (format: hh:mm).
<i>Minimum Uptime</i>	The minimum amount of time the router must be running before a scheduled reboot is permitted. This setting prevents reboot loops (e.g., during unstable power conditions). Range: 10–43,200 minutes.
<i>Maximum Uptime</i>	(Optional) Triggers an automatic reboot once the router's continuous uptime reaches this specified value. This is often used to ensure long-term system stability. If left blank, no reboot is triggered based on maximum uptime (range: 240–43,200 minutes).

Table 112: Reboot schedule configuration items description

Reboot Schedule			
☐ Enable scheduled reboot			
Week Days	Mo	Tu	We Th Fr Sa Su
	☒	☒	☒ ☒ ☒ ☒ ☒
Time	01	:	00 hh:mm
Minimum Uptime	240	min	10-43200 min
Maximum Uptime *		min	10-43200 min
* can be blank			
Apply			

Figure 122: Reboot schedule submenu

5.11 Logout

Clicking the *Logout* item in the main menu immediately terminates your session and logs you out of the router's web interface. You will be redirected to the login page.

Info



For security reasons, it is always recommended to log out when you have finished configuring the router, especially when accessing it from a shared or public computer.

6. Typical Use Cases

Advantech routers are highly versatile and support a wide range of applications. This chapter outlines several common deployment scenarios to illustrate the router's key features and capabilities in practical, real-world examples.

The configuration examples provided in this chapter are based on IPv4 networks.

Warning

These examples are not suitable for SmartFlex SR300 router.

6.1 Access to the Internet from LAN

This use case describes how to provide Internet access to a Local Area Network (LAN) using the router's cellular connection. For this configuration, a SIM card with an active data plan from a mobile network operator is required. The router is designed for a straightforward setup and will often connect to the mobile network automatically without any initial software configuration.

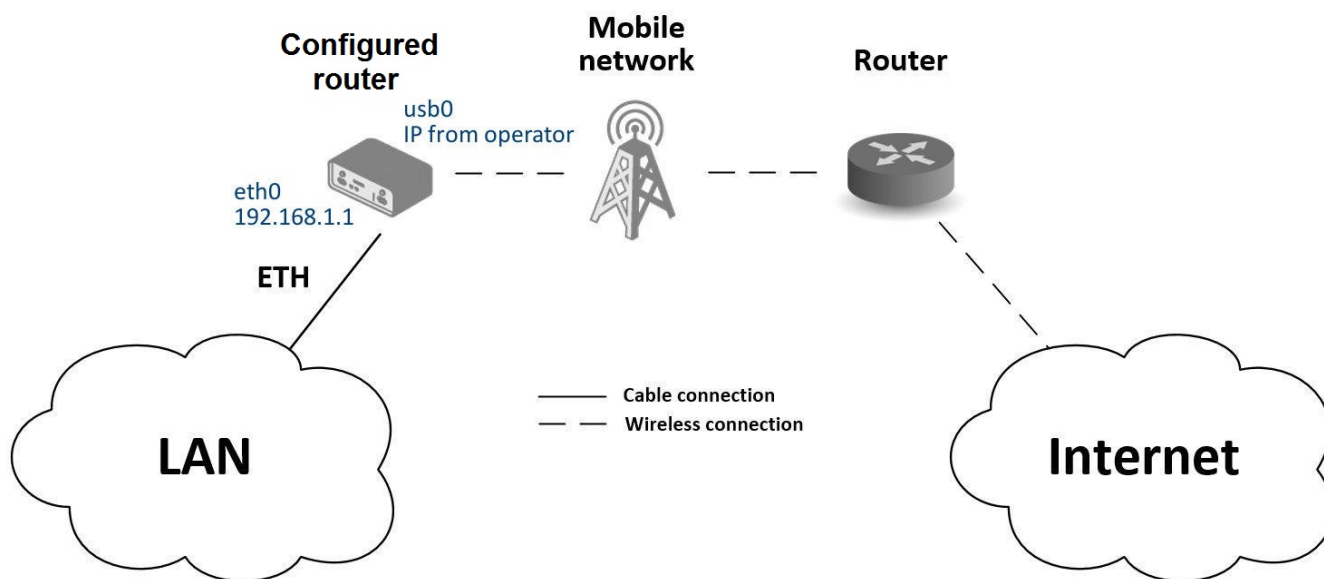


Figure 123: Access to the internet from LAN: a topology example

Initial Setup

1. Insert an active SIM card into the *SIM1* slot.
2. For the router to function correctly, you must securely attach an appropriate antenna to **every** antenna connector on the device. For optimal cellular performance and signal stability, both the main (*ANT*) and diversity (*DIV*) antennas are required. If your router model includes Wi-Fi or GNSS features, their respective antennas must also be connected.
3. Connect your computer or a local network switch to the router's *ETH0* port.
4. Connect the power supply to power on the router.

After powering on, wait for the router to register on the mobile network. A successful connection is indicated by the *WAN* and *DAT* LEDs on the front panel.

Configuration

While factory settings are often sufficient, you can review or modify the configuration in the router's web interface, accessible via the *Configuration* section.

Ethernet Configuration

Navigate to *Configuration* → *Ethernet*. The LAN interface (ETH0) is pre-configured with a static IP address of 192.168.1.1. The DHCP server is also enabled by default, which will automatically assign IP addresses to connected devices (e.g., the first computer will get 192.168.1.2). No changes are needed for this use case. For more details, see Chapter [3.4 Mobile WAN](#).

ETH0 Configuration		
	IPv4	IPv6
DHCP Client	disabled	disabled
IP Address	192.168.1.1	
Subnet Mask / Prefix	255.255.255.0	
Default Gateway		
DNS Server		
Bridged	no	
Media Type	auto-negotiation	
☒ Enable dynamic DHCP leases		
	IPv4	IPv6
IP Pool Start	192.168.1.2	
IP Pool End	192.168.1.254	
Lease Time	600	600 sec

Figure 124: Access to the internet from LAN: ethernet configuration

Mobile WAN Configuration

Go to the *Configuration → Mobile WAN* page. Ensure that the *Create connection to mobile network* option is enabled (this is the default setting). For most public SIM cards, you do not need to fill in the APN, username, or password. For more details, see Chapter [3.4 Mobile WAN](#).

1st Mobile WAN Configuration

☒ Create connection to mobile network

	1st SIM card	2nd SIM card
APN *		
Username *		
Password *		
Authentication	PAP or CHAP ▾	PAP or CHAP ▾
IP Mode	IPv4 ▾	IPv4 ▾
IP Address *		
Dial Number *		
Operator *		
Network Type	automatic selection ▾	automatic selection ▾
PIN *		
MRU	1500	1500 bytes
MTU	1500	1500 bytes
DNS Settings	get from operator ▾	get from operator ▾

Figure 125: Access to the internet from LAN: mobile WAN configuration

Verifying Connectivity

To confirm that the Internet connection is active, navigate to the *Status → Mobile WAN* page. This page displays key details about the connection, including the operator, signal strength, and a *Connection successfully established* message. You can also inspect the *Status → Network* page to see the new mobile interface (usb0) and the IP address assigned by the operator. Once confirmed, all devices on the LAN will have Internet access.

6.2 Backup Access to the Internet from LAN

This use case demonstrates how to configure connection redundancy by setting up multiple Internet sources (Ethernet WAN, Wi-Fi, and Cellular) and defining their priority. The router will automatically switch to a lower-priority connection if a higher-priority one fails, ensuring continuous Internet access for the LAN. This is managed through the *Backup Routes* feature.

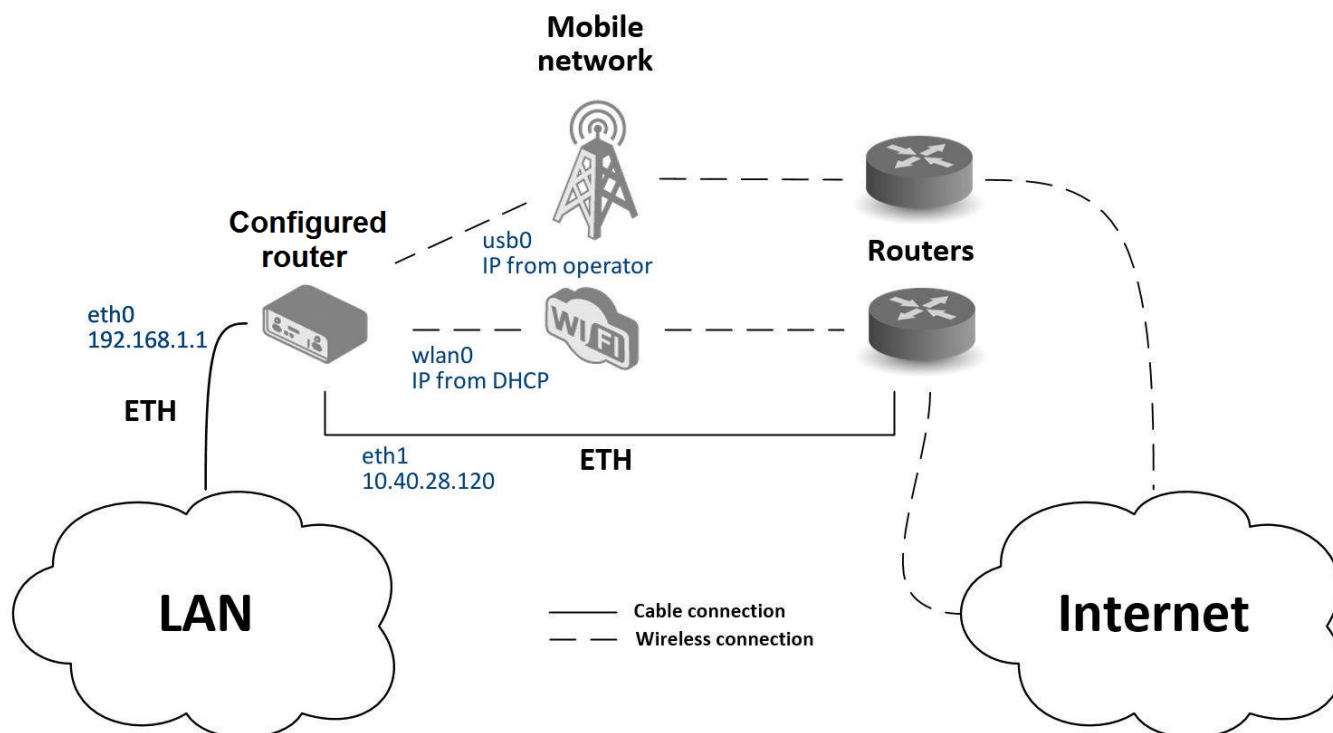


Figure 126: Backup access to the internet: a topology example

Interface Configuration

The first step is to configure each interface that will serve as an Internet source. The LAN interface (ETH0) can be left with its default settings as in the previous use case.

Ethernet WAN Configuration

The ETH1 port will be used as the primary wired WAN connection.

1. Navigate to *Configuration* → *Ethernet* → *ETH1*.
2. Configure the interface with a static IP address, subnet mask, default gateway, and DNS server provided by your Internet Service Provider.
3. Click the *Apply* button to save the changes.

For more details on Ethernet settings, see Chapter [3.1 Ethernet](#).

ETH1 Configuration		
	IPv4	IPv6
DHCP Client	disabled	disabled
IP Address	10.40.28.120	
Subnet Mask / Prefix	255.255.252.0	
Default Gateway	10.40.30.1	
DNS Server	192.168.2.27	
Bridged	no	
Media Type	auto-negotiation	
☐ Enable dynamic DHCP leases		
	IPv4	IPv6
IP Pool Start		
IP Pool End		
Lease Time	600	600 sec

Figure 127: Backup access to the internet: ethernet configuration

Wi-Fi WAN Configuration

To use Wi-Fi as a backup connection, configure the router to act as a client (Station) to another Wi-Fi network.

1. Navigate to *Configuration* → *WiFi* → *Station*.
2. Check *Enable WiFi STA*.
3. If the Wi-Fi network provides settings automatically, enable the DHCP client. Otherwise, manually enter the default gateway and DNS server addresses.
4. Enter the network's *SSID* and select the appropriate *Authentication*, *Encryption*, and *WPA PSK Type*.
5. Enter the Wi-Fi password and click *Apply*.

You can verify the connection in *Status* → *WiFi*, where a successful connection will show the status `wpa_state=COMPLETE`. For more details, see Chapter 3.6.2 *Station*.

WiFi STA Configuration		
☒ Enable WiFi STA		
	IPv4	IPv6
DHCP Client	enabled ▼	enabled ▼
IP Address		
Subnet Mask / Prefix		
Default Gateway	192.168.3.1	
DNS Server	192.168.3.1	
SSID	WiFiNetwork	
Probe Hidden SSID	enabled ▼	
Country Code *		
Authentication	WPA2-PSK ▼	
Encryption	AES ▼	
WEP Key Type	ASCII ▼	
WEP Default Key	1 ▼	
WEP Key 1		
WEP Key 2		
WEP Key 3		
WEP Key 4		
WPA PSK Type	ASCII passphrase ▼	
WPA PSK	WiFiPassword	

Figure 128: Backup access to the internet: wi-fi configuration

Mobile WAN Configuration

The cellular connection will serve as the final backup. For basic setup, insert an active SIM card into the *SIM1* slot and attach the cellular antenna. To integrate it into the backup system, connection monitoring must be enabled.

1. Navigate to *Configuration* → *Mobile WAN*.
2. Set the *Check connection* option to *enabled + bind*.
3. In the fields that appear, enter a reliable IP address to ping (e.g., your operator's DNS server) and set the check interval.

This allows the router to detect when the cellular connection is active. For detailed settings, see Chapter [3.4 Mobile WAN](#).

1st Mobile WAN Configuration			
☒ Create connection to mobile network			
	1st SIM card	2nd SIM card	
APN *			
Username *			
Password *			
Authentication	PAP or CHAP ▼	PAP or CHAP ▼	
IP Mode	IPv4 ▼	IPv4 ▼	
IP Address *			
Dial Number *			
Operator *			
Network Type	automatic selection ▼	automatic selection ▼	
PIN *			
MRU	1500	1500	bytes
MTU	1500	1500	bytes
DNS Settings	get from operator ▼	get from operator ▼	
DNS IP Address			
DNS IPv6 Address			
<i>(The feature of check connection to mobile network is necessary for uninterrupted operation)</i>			
Check Connection	enabled + bind ▼	disabled ▼	
Ping IP Address	8.8.8.8		
Ping IPv6 Address			
Ping Interval		sec	
Ping Timeout	10	10	sec

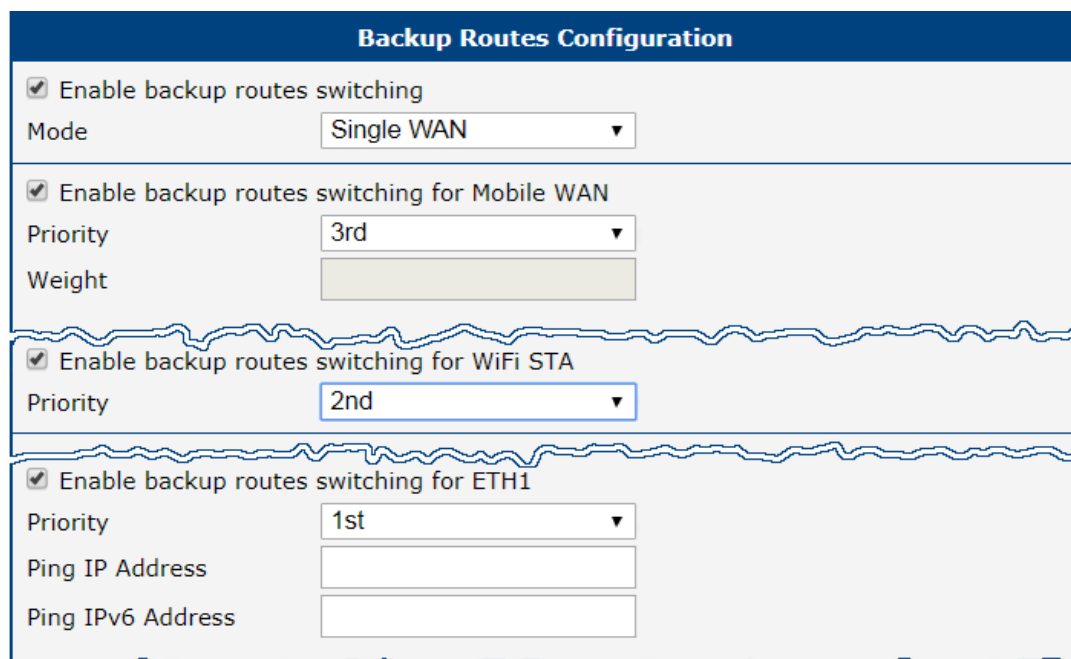
Figure 129: Backup access to the internet: mobile WAN configuration

Backup Routes Configuration

After configuring the interfaces, their priority must be set in the *Backup Routes* menu.

1. Navigate to *Configuration* → *Backup Routes*.
2. Set the priority for each WAN interface. In this example, the priority is:
 - **1 (Highest):** eth1 (Wired Ethernet)
 - **2 (Medium):** wlan0 (Wi-Fi)
 - **3 (Lowest):** usb0 (Cellular)
3. For each route, check the *Enable backup routes switching* box to activate it.
4. Click *Apply* to save the configuration.

For more details, see Chapter [3.7 Backup Routes](#).



The screenshot displays the 'Backup Routes Configuration' window. It features four sections, each with a checked 'Enable backup routes switching' checkbox. The first section, 'Single WAN', has a 'Mode' dropdown set to 'Single WAN'. The second section, 'Mobile WAN', has a 'Priority' dropdown set to '3rd' and an empty 'Weight' field. The third section, 'WiFi STA', has a 'Priority' dropdown set to '2nd'. The fourth section, 'ETH1', has a 'Priority' dropdown set to '1st', and empty fields for 'Ping IP Address' and 'Ping IPv6 Address'.

Figure 130: Backup access to the internet: backup routes configuration

Verifying Failover

You can monitor the status of all network interfaces under *Status* → *Network*. The *Route Table* at the bottom of the page will show which interface is currently active as the default route. If the primary eth1 connection fails, the default route will automatically switch to wlan0. If wlan0 also fails, it will switch to usb0.

6.3 Secure Network Interconnection with VPN

A Virtual Private Network (VPN) creates a secure, encrypted tunnel over an untrusted public network (like the Internet), allowing two or more separate LANs to communicate as if they were a single, private network. This ensures both the confidentiality and integrity of the data exchanged between the networks.

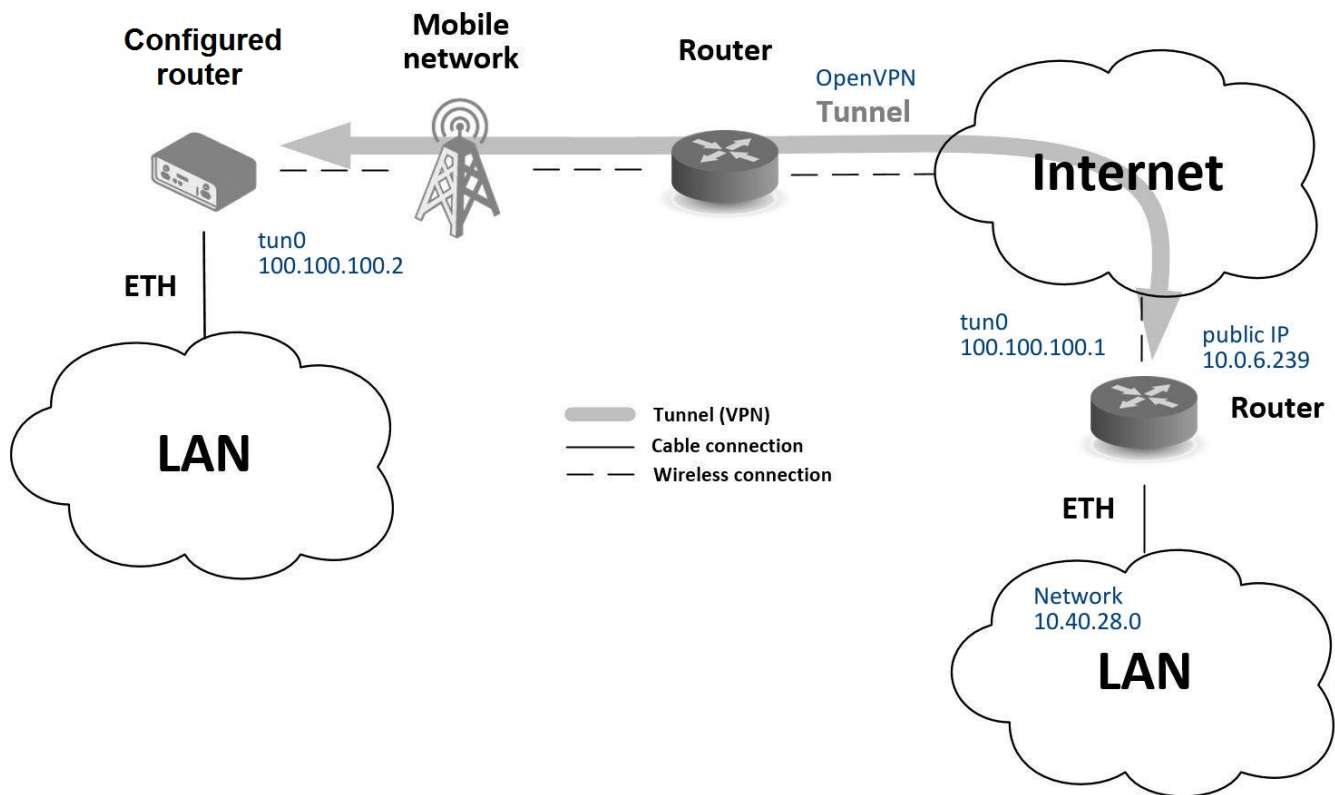


Figure 131: Secure networks interconnection: a topology example

Advantech routers support several VPN protocols, including:

- **OpenVPN:** A highly flexible and secure SSL/TLS-based VPN. See Chapter [3.11 OpenVPN](#) or *OpenVPN Tunnel* [6] Application Note for details.
- **IPsec:** A standards-based framework for securing IP communications. See Chapter [3.12 IPsec](#) or *IPsec Tunnel* [7] Application Note for details.

The router also supports non-encrypted tunneling protocols like *GRE*, *PPTP*, and *L2TP*, which can be combined with IPsec to create secure VPNs.

This example demonstrates how to establish an OpenVPN tunnel between two routers using a pre-shared secret key for authentication.

Configuration

The setup involves configuring the primary Internet connection and then configuring the OpenVPN tunnel itself.

Mobile WAN Configuration

A stable Internet connection is required before establishing a VPN tunnel. As in previous examples, the cellular connection can be used as the primary WAN link. Ensure that a SIM card is inserted and an antenna is attached. The router will typically establish a connection automatically. Verify that the mobile connection is active under *Configuration* → *Mobile WAN*, as detailed in Chapter [3.4 Mobile WAN](#).

OpenVPN Configuration

1. Navigate to *Configuration* → *OpenVPN*.
2. Enable one of the available tunnels by checking *Create 1st OpenVPN tunnel*.
3. Set the *Protocol* and *UDP/TCP port* to match the settings of the remote router (the OpenVPN server).
4. In the *1st Remote IP Address* field, enter the public IP address of the remote router.
5. In the *Authenticate Mode* dropdown, select *pre-shared secret*.
6. Paste the pre-shared secret key into the *Pre-shared Secret* field.
7. Define the virtual IP addresses for the tunnel endpoints in the *Local Interface IP Address* and *Remote Interface IP Address* fields. These must be unique and form a mini-subnet for the tunnel (e.g., 10.8.0.1 and 10.8.0.2).
8. Click *Apply* to save the configuration.

For more detailed guidance, refer to Chapter [3.11 OpenVPN](#) or *OpenVPN Tunnel* [6] Application Note.

Verifying Connectivity

You can confirm that the VPN tunnel is active by checking the following:

- **Network Status Page:** Go to *Status* → *Network*. A new virtual interface, *tun0*, should be listed with the IP address you configured.
- **System Log:** Navigate to *Status* → *System Log*. Look for a log entry stating *Initialization Sequence Completed*, which confirms that the OpenVPN tunnel has been successfully established.

Once the tunnel is active, the two networks are securely interconnected. You can verify this by pinging the remote tunnel endpoint's IP address from the router's command-line interface (accessible via SSH).

1st OpenVPN Tunnel Configuration		
☒ Create 1st OpenVPN tunnel		
Description *	myTunnel	
Interface Type	TUN	
Protocol	UDP	
UDP Port	3000	
Remote IP Address *	10.0.6.239	
Remote Subnet *	10.40.28.0	
Remote Subnet Mask *	255.255.252.0	
Redirect Gateway	no	
Local Interface IP Address	100.100.100.2	
Remote Interface IP Address	100.100.100.1	
Remote IPv6 Subnet *		
Remote IPv6 Subnet Prefix Length *		
Local Interface IPv6 Address *		
Remote Interface IPv6 Address *		
Ping Interval *	10	sec
Ping Timeout *	30	sec
Renegotiate Interval *		sec
Max Fragment Size *		bytes
Compression	LZO	
NAT Rules	not applied	
Authenticate Mode	pre-shared secret	
Security Mode	tls-auth	
Pre-shared Secret	# 2048 OpenVPN static key	

Figure 132: Secure network interconnection: OpenVPN configuration

6.4 Serial Gateway

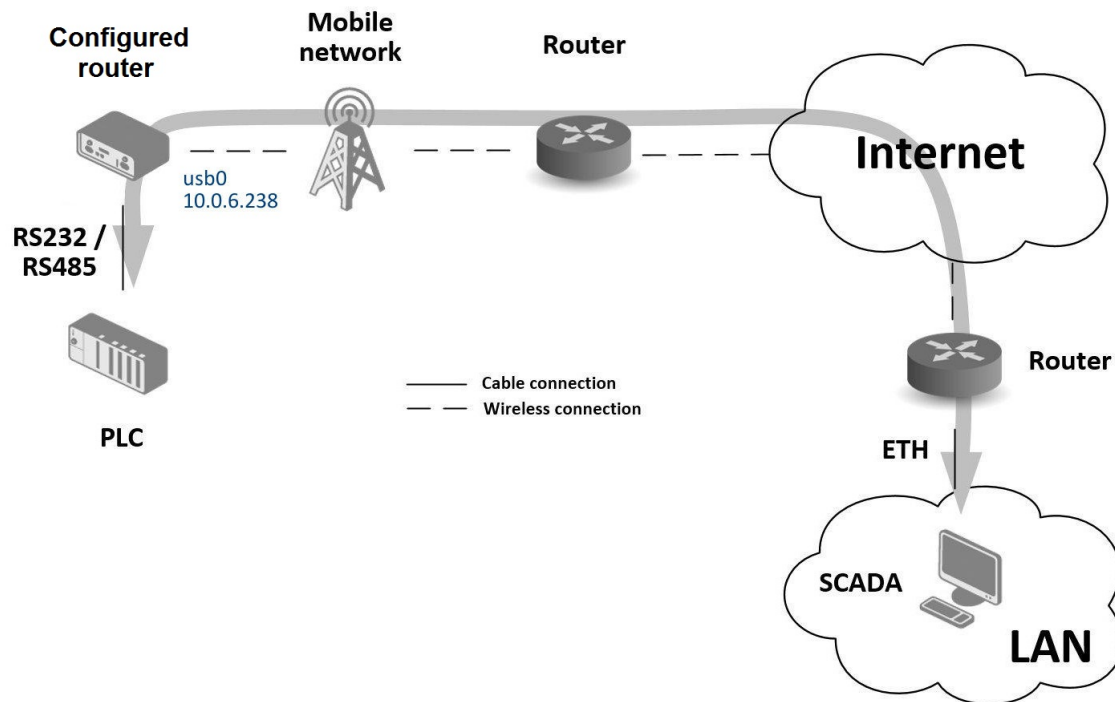


Figure 133: Serial Gateway – sample topology

The router's serial gateway function lets you establish serial connectivity across the internet or with another network. Serial devices (meters, PLC, etc.) can then upload and download data. (See Fig. 133.) To use this function the router model must have a serial interface (port). Options include RS232, RS485-232 or RS232-485-ETH.

Configuration is done in the *Configuration* section, *Mobile WAN*, with the *Expansion Port 1* item (or *Expansion Port 2*, for RS422 and RS485). In this example, the router is equipped with an RS232 interface (port).

Mobile WAN configuration

Mobile WAN configuration is the same as in the previous examples. Just insert the SIM card into the *SIM1* slot at the back of the router and attach the antenna to the *ANT* connector at the front. No extra configuration is needed (depending on the SIM card used). For more details see Chapter 3.4.

Expansion Port 1 configuration

The RS232 interface (port) can be configured in the *Configuration* section, via the *Expansion Port 1* item. (See fig. 134.) You will need to enable the RS232 port by checking *Enable expansion port 1 access over TCP/UDP*. You may edit the serial communication parameters (not needed in this example). The important items are *Protocol*, *Mode* and *Port*. These set the parameters of communication out to the network and the internet. In this example the TCP protocol is chosen, and the router will work as a server listening on the 2345 TCP port. Confirm the configuration clicking the *Apply* button.

RS-232 Serial Port Configuration			
☒ Enable access over TCP/UDP			
Baudrate	9600		
Data Bits	8		
Parity	none		
Stop Bits	1		
Flow Control	none		
Split Timeout	20	msec	1-10000 msec
Protocol	TCP		
Mode	server		
Server Address			
TCP Port	2345		
Inactivity Timeout *		sec	1-86400 sec
☐ Reject new connections			
☐ Check TCP connection			
Keepalive Time	3600	sec	1-86400 sec
Keepalive Interval	10	sec	1-120 sec
Keepalive Probes	5		1-10
* can be blank			
Apply			

Figure 134: Serial Gateway – expansion port 1

To communicate with the serial device (PLC), connect from the PC (Labeled as SCADA in Fig. 133) as a TCP client to the IP address 10.0.6.238, port 2345 (the public IP address of the SIM card used in the router, corresponding to the usb0 network interface). The devices can now communicate. To check the connection, go to *System Log (Status section)* and look for the *TCP connection established* message.

Appendix A: Open Source Software License

The software in this device includes various open-source components governed by the following licenses:

- GPL versions 2 and 3
- LGPL version 2
- BSD-style licenses
- MIT-style licenses

A complete list of components and their respective license texts can be found directly on the device. To access them, click the *Licenses* link at the bottom of the router's main web page (*General Status*) or navigate to the following URL in your browser (replace `DEVICE_IP` with the actual router's IP address):

https://DEVICE_IP/licenses.cgi

This serves as a written offer, valid for three years from the date of purchase, to provide any third party with a complete machine-readable copy of the corresponding source code on a flash drive medium for a fee no greater than the cost of physically performing the source distribution. If you wish to obtain the source code, please contact us at:

iiotcustomerservice@advantech.eu

Modifications and debugging of LGPL-linked executables:

The device manufacturer grants customers the right to use debugging techniques (e.g., decompilation) and modify any executable linked with an LGPL library for their own use. These rights are strictly limited to personal usage—redistribution of modified executables or sharing information obtained through these actions is not permitted.

Source code under the GPL license is available at:

icr.advantech.com/source-code

Appendix B: Glossary and Acronyms

B | D | G | H | I | L | N | O | P | R | S | T | U | V | W | X

B

Backup Routes Allows user to back up the primary connection with alternative connections to the Internet/mobile network. Each backup connection can have assigned a priority. Switching between connections is done based upon set priorities and the state of the connections.

D

DHCP The Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) is a network protocol used to configure devices that are connected to a network so they can communicate on that network using the Internet Protocol (IP). The protocol is implemented in a client-server model, in which DHCP clients request configuration data, such as an IP address, a default route, and one or more DNS server addresses from a DHCP server.

DHCP client Requests network configuration from DHCP server.

DHCP server Answers configuration request by DHCP clients and sends network configuration details.

DNS The Domain Name System (DNS) is a hierarchical distributed naming system for computers, services, or any resource connected to the Internet or a private network. It associates various information with domain names assigned to each of the participating entities. Most prominently, it translates easily memorized domain names to the numerical IP addresses needed for the purpose of locating computer services and devices worldwide. By providing a worldwide, distributed keyword-based redirection service, the Domain Name System is an essential component of the functionality of the Internet.

DynDNS client DynDNS service lets you access the router remotely using an easy to remember custom hostname. This client monitors the router's IP address and updates it whenever it changes.

G

GRE Generic Routing Encapsulation (GRE) is a tunneling protocol that can encapsulate a wide variety of network layer protocols inside virtual point-to-point links over an Internet Protocol network. It is possible to create four different tunnels.

H

HTTP The Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP) is an application protocol for distributed, collaborative, hypermedia information systems. HTTP is the foundation of data communication for the World Wide Web.

Hypertext is structured text that uses logical links (hyperlinks) between nodes containing text. HTTP is the protocol to exchange or transfer hypertext.

HTTPS The Hypertext Transfer Protocol Secure (HTTPS) is a communications protocol for secure communication over a computer network, with especially wide deployment on the Internet. Technically, it is not a protocol in and of itself; rather, it is the result of simply layering the Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP) on top of the SSL/TLS protocol, thus adding the security capabilities of SSL/TLS to standard HTTP communications.

I

IP address An Internet Protocol address (IP address) is a numerical label assigned to each device (e.g., computer, printer) participating in a computer network that uses the Internet Protocol for communication. An IP address serves two principal functions: host or network interface identification and location addressing. Its role has been characterized as follows: *A name indicates what we seek. An address indicates where it is. A route indicates how to get there*. The designers of the Internet Protocol defined an IP address as a 32-bit number and this system, known as Internet Protocol Version 4 (IPv4), is still in use today. However, due to the enormous growth of the Internet and the predicted depletion of available addresses, a new version of IP (IPv6), using 128 bits for the address, was developed in 1995.

IP masquerade Kind of NAT.

IP masquerading see NAT.

IPsec Internet Protocol Security (IPsec) is a protocol suite for securing Internet Protocol (IP) communications by authenticating and encrypting each IP packet of a communication session. The router allows user to select encapsulation mode (tunnel or transport), IKE mode (main or aggressive), IKE Algorithm, IKE Encryption, ESP Algorithm, ESP Encryption and much more. It is possible to create four different tunnels.

IPv4 The Internet Protocol version 4 (IPv4) is the fourth version in the development of the Internet Protocol (IP) and the first version of the protocol to be widely deployed. It is one of the core protocols of standards-based internetworking methods of the Internet, and routes most traffic in the Internet. However, a successor protocol, IPv6, has been defined and is in various stages of production deployment. IPv4 is described in IETF publication RFC 791 (September 1981), replacing an earlier definition (RFC 760, January 1980).

IPv6 The Internet Protocol version 6 (IPv6) is the most recent version of the Internet Protocol (IP), the communications protocol that provides an identification and location system for computers on networks and routes traffic across the Internet. IPv6 was developed by the Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) to deal with the long-anticipated problem of IPv4 address exhaustion. IPv6 addresses are represented as eight groups of four hexadecimal digits separated by colons (e.g., 2001:0db8:85a3:0042:1000:8a2e:0370:7334), though various abbreviation methods are also used..

L

L2TP Layer 2 Tunnelling Protocol (L2TP) is a tunnelling protocol used to support virtual private networks (VPNs) or as part of the delivery of services by ISPs. It does not provide any encryption or confidentiality by itself. Rather, it relies on an encryption protocol that it passes within the tunnel to provide privacy.

LAN A local area network (LAN) is a computer network that interconnects computers in a limited area such as a home, school, computer laboratory, or office building using network media. The defining characteristics of LANs, in contrast to wide area networks (WANs), include their usually higher data-transfer rates, smaller geographic area, and lack of a need for leased

telecommunication lines.

N

NAT In computer networking, Network Address Translation (NAT) is the process of modifying IP address information in IPv4 headers while in transit across a traffic routing device.

The simplest type of NAT provides a one-to-one translation of IP addresses. RFC 2663 refers to this type of NAT as basic NAT, which is often also called a one-to-one NAT. In this type of NAT only the IP addresses, IP header checksum and any higher level checksums that include the IP address are changed. The rest of the packet is left untouched (at least for basic TCP/UDP functionality; some higher level protocols may need further translation). Basic NATs can be used to interconnect two IP networks that have incompatible addressing.

NAT-T NAT traversal (NAT-T) is a computer networking methodology with the goal to establish and maintain Internet protocol connections across gateways that implement network address translation (NAT).

NTP Network Time Protocol (NTP) is a networking protocol for clock synchronization between computer systems over packet-switched, variable-latency data networks.

O

OpenVPN OpenVPN implements virtual private network (VPN) techniques for creating secure point-to-point or site-to-site connections. It is possible to create four different tunnels.

P

PAT Port and Address Translation (PAT) or Network Address Port Translation (NAPT) see NAT.

Port In computer networking, a Port is an application-specific or process-specific software construct serving as a communications endpoint in a computer's host operating system. A port is associated with an IP address of the host, as well as the type of protocol used for communication. The purpose of ports is to uniquely identify different applications or processes running on a single computer and thereby enable them to share a single physical connection to a packet-switched network like the Internet.

PPTP The Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol (PPTP) is a tunneling protocol that operates at the

Data Link Layer (Layer 2) of the OSI Reference Model. PPTP is a proprietary technique that encapsulates Point-to-Point Protocol (PPP) frames in Internet Protocol (IP) packets using the Generic Routing Encapsulation (GRE) protocol. Packet filters provide access control, end-to-end and server-to-server.

R

RADIUS Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service (RADIUS) is a networking protocol that provides centralized Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting (AAA or Triple A) management for users who connect and use a network service. Because of the broad support and the ubiquitous nature of the RADIUS protocol, it is often used by ISPs and enterprises to manage access to the Internet or internal networks, wireless networks, and integrated e-mail services.

Root certificate In cryptography and computer security, a root certificate is either an unsigned public key certificate or a self-signed certificate that identifies the Root Certificate Authority (CA). A root certificate is part of a public key infrastructure scheme. The most common commercial variety is based on the ITU-T X.509 standard, which normally includes a digital signature from a certificate authority (CA). Digital certificates are verified using a chain of trust. The trust anchor for the digital certificate is the Root Certificate Authority (CA). See X.509.

Router A router is a device that forwards data packets between computer networks, creating an overlay internetwork. A router is connected to two or more data lines from different networks. When a data packet comes in one of the lines, the router reads the address information in the packet to determine its ultimate destination. Then, using information in its routing table or routing policy, it directs the packet to the next network on its journey. Routers perform the *traffic directing* functions on the Internet. A data packet is typically forwarded from one router to another through the networks that constitute the internetwork until it reaches its destination node.

S

SFTP Secure File Transfer Protocol (SFTP) is a secure version of File Transfer Protocol (FTP), which facilitates data access and data transfer over a Secure Shell (SSH) data stream. It is part of the

SSH Protocol. This term is also known as SSH File Transfer Protocol.

SMTP The SMTP (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol) is a standard e-mail protocol on the Internet and part of the TCP/IP protocol suite, as defined by IETF RFC 2821. SMTP defines the message format and the message transfer agent (MTA), which stores and forwards the mail. SMTP by default uses TCP port 25. The protocol for mail submission is the same, but uses port 587. SMTP connections secured by SSL, known as SMTPS, default to port 465.

SMTPS SMTPS (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol Secure) refers to a method for securing SMTP with transport layer security. For more information about SMTP, see description of the SMTP.

SNMP The Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) is an *Internet-standard protocol for managing devices on IP networks*. Devices that typically support SNMP include routers, switches, servers, workstations, printers, modem racks, and more. It is used mostly in network management systems to monitor network-attached devices for conditions that warrant administrative attention. SNMP is a component of the Internet Protocol Suite as defined by the Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF). It consists of a set of standards for network management, including an application layer protocol, a database schema, and a set of data objects.

SSH Secure Shell (SSH), sometimes known as Secure Socket Shell, is a UNIX-based command interface and protocol for securely getting access to a remote computer. It is widely used by network administrators to control Web and other kinds of servers remotely. SSH is actually a suite of three utilities – `slogin`, `ssh`, and `scp` – that are secure versions of the earlier UNIX utilities, `rlogin`, `rsh`, and `rcp`. SSH commands are encrypted and secure in several ways. Both ends of the client/server connection are authenticated using a digital certificate, and passwords are protected by being encrypted.

T

TCP The Transmission Control Protocol (TCP) is one of the core protocols of the Internet protocol suite (IP), and is so common that the entire suite is often called TCP/IP. TCP provides reliable, ordered, error-checked delivery of a stream of octets between programs running on computers connected to a local area network, intranet or the public Internet. It resides at the transport layer.

Web browsers use TCP when they connect to servers on the World Wide Web, and it is used to deliver email and transfer files from one location to another.

U

UDP The User Datagram Protocol (UDP) is one of the core members of the Internet protocol suite (the set of network protocols used for the Internet). With UDP, computer applications can send messages, in this case referred to as datagrams, to other hosts on an Internet Protocol (IP) network without prior communications to set up special transmission channels or data paths. The protocol was designed by David P. Reed in 1980 and formally defined in RFC 768.

URL A uniform resource locator, abbreviated URL, also known as web address, is a specific character string that constitutes a reference to a resource. In most web browsers, the URL of a web page is displayed on top inside an address bar. An example of a typical URL would be <http://www.example.com/index.html>, which indicates a protocol (http), a host-name (www.example.com), and a file name (index.html). A URL is technically a type of uniform resource identifier (URI), but in many technical documents and verbal discussions, URL is often used as a synonym for URI, and this is not considered a problem.

V

VPN A virtual private network (VPN) extends a private network across a public network, such as the Internet. It enables a computer to send and receive data across shared or public networks as if it were directly connected to the private network, while benefiting from the functionality, security and management policies of the private network. This is done by establishing a virtual point-to-point connection through the use of dedicated connections, encryption, or a combination of the two.

A VPN connection across the Internet is similar to a wide area network (WAN) link between the sites. From a user perspective, the extended network resources are accessed in the same way as resources available from the private network.

VPN server see VPN.

VPN tunnel see VPN.

VRRP VRRP protocol (Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol) allows you to transfer packet routing from the main router to a backup router in case the main router fails. (This can be used to provide a wireless cellular backup to a primary wired router in critical applications).

W

WAN A wide area network (WAN) is a network that covers a broad area (i.e., any telecommunications network that links across metropolitan, regional, or national boundaries) using private or public network transports. Business and government entities utilize WANs to relay data among employees, clients, buyers, and suppliers from various geographical locations. In essence, this mode of telecommunication allows a business to effectively carry out its daily function regardless of location. The Internet can be considered a WAN as well, and is used by businesses, governments, organizations, and individuals for almost any purpose imaginable.

WebAccess/DMP WebAccess/DMP is an advanced Enterprise-Grade platform solution for provisioning, monitoring, managing and configuring Advantech's routers and IoT gateways. It provides a zero-touch enablement platform for each remote device.

WebAccess/VPN WebAccess/VPN is an advanced VPN management solution for safe interconnection of Advantech routers and LAN networks in public Internet. Connection among devices and networks can be regional or global and can combine different technology platforms and various wireless, LTE, fixed and satellite connectivities.

X

X.509 In cryptography, X.509 is an ITU-T standard for a public key infrastructure (PKI) and Privilege Management Infrastructure (PMI). X.509 specifies, amongst other things, standard formats for public key certificates, certificate revocation lists, attribute certificates, and a certification path validation algorithm.

Appendix C: Index

A

Access Point	
Configuration	62
Accessing the router	2
Allowed Characters	4
APN	52
AT-SMS Protocol	131
Authentication	150

B

Backup Configuration	186
Backup Routes	71
Bridge	34

C

Certificate Formats	5
Change Profile	179
Configuration update	155
Connections	
Status	29

D

Data limit	55
Default Gateway	33, 67
Default IP address	2
Default password	3
Default SIM card	57
Default username	3
DHCP	25, 33, 67, 208
DHCPv6	35
Dynamic	35
Static	35
DHCPv6	25, 33, 67
Diagnostic Data	
Save	31
DNS	208
DNS server	33, 53, 67
DNS64	23
Domain Name System	see DNS
DoS attacks	83
Dynamic DNS	
Configuration	117
Status	28
Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol	see DHCP
DynDNSv6	117

E

Email	
Sending	128
Events	159
Actions	160
Matrix	160
SNMP	161

F

Factory Reset	188
Firewall	81
Filtering of Forwarded Packets	82
Filtering of Incoming Packets	82
Protection against DoS attacks	83
Firmware	
Update	189
Firmware update	155
Firmware version	11
First-Time Login to the Admin Web Interface	3
FTP	119

G

GNSS	120
GRE	111, 208

H

HTTP	123
HTTPS	123
HTTPS Certificate	4

I

ICMPv6	54
Identification	154
IPsec	26, 96, 209
IPv4	209
IPv6	7, 23, 32, 36, 52, 54, 81, 86, 91, 96, 163, 165
Dynamic DNS	28

L

L2TP	113, 209
LAN	
ETH0	32
ETH1	32
ETH2	32

IPv6	32
Link Layer Discovery Protocol	125
LLDP	125
Neighbors	24
Log	
Save	31
Logout	193

M

Manage Users	172
Mobile network	51
Mobile WAN	12
Log	14
Network Information	13
Periods	14
Statistics	14
Modify User	178
Multiple WANs	71

N

NAPT	86
NAT	86, 209
NAT64	23
Network Address Translation	see NAT
NTP	126, 209

O

Object Identifier	135
OpenVPN	91, 209

P

Password	
Forced Change	177
PAT	86
Peripheral Port	
RS232	143
RS485	146
Peripheral Ports	143
PIN code	
Remove	181
PoE PSE	8, 34
Port	209
PPPoE	60
PPPoE Bridge Mode	58
PPTP	115, 209
Prefix delegation	36
PUK code	182

Q

Quick Setup	166
-------------------	-----

R

RADIUS	38, 62
Reboot	191
Remote access	87
Remote Management	5
Report	
Save	31
Reset	6
Restore Configuration	187
Factory Reset	188
From File	187
Router	1
Accessing	2
Router Apps	169
Status	30
Routing	
Table	23

S

Scripts	162, 164
Serial line	
RS232	143
RS485	146
Serial number	11
Set internal clock	180
SIM card	
Management	181
Switch	184
Unblock	182
Unlock	181
Simple Network Management Protocol	see SNMP
SMS	129
Notifications	129
Remote Control	130
Send	185
Service Center	183
SMTP	128, 210
SNMP	133, 210
SSH	137
Host Key	138
Passwordless Login	176
Startup Script	162, 164
Static Routes	80
Storage	6
Switch between SIM Cards	56
Syslog	
Authentication	141
Configuration	139
Forwarding	140
System	150

System Log	31
------------------	----

T

TCP	210
Telnet	142
Transmission Control Protocol	see TCP
Two-Factor Authentication	175
Login	175

U

UDP	211
Uniform resource locator	see URL
Up/Down script	163, 165
URL	211
Usage Profiles	179
Use Case	
Access from LAN	194
Connection Backup	197
VPN	202
User Datagram Protocol	see UDP
Users	
Roles	173

V

Virtual private network	see VPN
VLAN	45
VPN	202, 211
IPsec	26
WireGuard	27
VRRP	47, 211
VXLAN	109

W

Web Server	123
WebAccess/DMP	5
Wi-Fi	15
Authentication	68
Country Code	70
Module Information	16
Scan	20
Wi-Fi AP	62
Wi-Fi STA	67
Wi-Fi Station	
Configuration	67
WireGuard	27, 105

Appendix D: Related Documents

- [1] Command Line Interface
- [2] Extending Router Functionality
- [3] Remote Monitoring
- [4] WebAccess/DMP
- [5] R-SeeNet
- [6] OpenVPN Tunnel
- [7] IPsec Tunnel
- [8] GRE Tunnel
- [9] WireGuard Tunnel
- [10] FlexVPN
- [11] VLAN
- [12] SNMP Object Identifiers
- [13] AT Commands (AT-SMS)
- [14] Quality of Service (QoS)
- [15] Security Guidelines

[EP] Product-related documents and applications can be obtained on **Engineering Portal** at <https://icr.advantech.com/support/router-models> address.

[RA] **Router Apps** (formerly *User modules*) and related documents can be obtained on *Engineering Portal* at <https://icr.advantech.com/products/router-apps> address.